942.03
Fro/chr
37325

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.

TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,

WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS [illegible] CELEBRATED MSS.

37325 ac

BY THOMAS JOHNES.

3732

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste reherse, as neighe as ever he can,
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudely and so large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,

A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,

AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. VIII.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW; AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1808.

ref·942·04

942·W·
Fro/Chr
37325

CONTENTS

OF

THE EIGHTH VOLUME.

Page

CHAP. I. The Ambassadors from Portugal return with satisfactory Answers.—The Duke of Lancaster embarks on an Expedition to recover Castille - - 1

II. Many French Knights and Squires offer their Services to the King of Castille 6

III. The Duke of Lancaster, in his Voyage to Castille, attacks the French before Brest, and forces them to raise the Blockade - - - - - 9

IV. The Duke of Lancaster arrives at Corunna in Galicia.—The French, in the Service of Spain, enter the Castle to oppose him.—They shortly after defeat a Party of his Foragers - - - 14

V. The Duke of Lancaster, after remaining before Corunna upwards of a Month, marches his Army to Sant Jago, which surrenders on Capitulation - - 20

Page

CHAP. VI. The French Knights leave Corunna, and join the King of Castille.—They acquire much Wealth by plundering the Country, in order to frustrate the English - - - 25

VII. Great Preparations are made throughout France for the Invasion of England.—The Death of Francis Atremen - - - - - 31

VIII. The French put themselves to useless Expense on their Marine.—The English make judicious Preparations to oppose them - - 40

IX. The King of Portugal, when informed of the Duke of Lancaster's Arrival at Sant Jago, writes him friendly Letters.—The King of Castille demands Succours from France.—The Town of Rouelles in Galicia taken by the English 47

X. The Marshal of the Duke of Lancaster's Army attacks and gains by Treaty the Town of Villeclope in Galicia.—The Duke sends Ambassadors to the King of Portugal to arrange an Interview between them - - - - - - 55

XI. The Duke of Lancaster has an Interview with the King of Portugal.—A Marriage is agreed upon between the King and the Lady Philippa, Daughter of the Duke - - - - - 68

Page

CHAP. XII. The Duke of Lancaster's Marshal gains for him several Places in Galicia.—The Conduct of the King of Castille - - - - 75

XIII. The King of France goes to Lille, with the Intent to invade England.—Sir Simon Burley advises the Removal of the Shrine of St. Thomas a Becket from Canterbury to Dover Castle, for Fear of the French - - - - - 95

XIV. The King of France visits his Fleet at Sluys.—The King of Armenia crosses to England, to attempt a Reconciliation between the two Kings.—The Answer he receives 102

XV. The Duke of Berry leaves Paris for Sluys.—The Constable, after suffering many Delays from contrary Winds, at length joins the King of France - - - - - - 110

XVI. The Lord de Guistelles appeases an Insurrection of the Men of Bruges against the French.—The Invasion of England is given up, on Account of contrary Winds, the near Approach of Winter, and in Conformity with the Advice of the Duke of Berry, which causes great Rejoicings in England - - 113

XVII. Two Champions tilt at Paris, for Life or Death - - - - 119

Page

CHAP. XVIII. The Death of Peter King of Arragon.—His Successor, King John, detains Prisoner the Archbishop of Bordeaux, who was negotiating, for the Duke of Lancaster, the Payment of certain Sums which he claimed as due to him from Arragon - - - - 127

XIX. The Duke of Lancaster makes War on Arragon.—The Archbishop of Bordeaux is released.—The Viscountess of Castle-Bon, suspected of having admitted the English into her Castle, appeases the King of Arragon, through the Interference of the Count De Foix - - - - - - 131

XX. Those Companions who had conquered Duren are defeated and slain, by a Stratagem of Raymond De Bachez, Cousin to the King of Arragon - - - - - 136

XXI. An Achievement of Arms performed before the Sénéschal of Bordeaux, between a Knight attached to France and one attached to England - - - - - 140

XXII. Sir Oliver De Clisson delivers John of Blois, Son of the late Lord Charles of Blois, from his long Imprisonment in England, and gives him his Daughter in Marriage, to the great Displeasure of the Duke of Brittany - - - 142

CHAP.

Page

CHAP. XXIII. France makes Preparations to assist King John of Castille.—The Duke of Bourbon is appointed Commander in Chief of the French Army - - - 153

XXIV. The English Fleet defeats that of Sir John De Bucq, Admiral of Flanders for the Duke of Burgundy.—The English, after doing much Mischief to Sluys, and that Part of the Country, return to London - - - - 156

XXV. The King of Portugal sends Ambassadors to the Duke of Lancaster to conclude his Marriage with the Lady Philippa.—Sir Barrois Des Barres is ordered by the King of Castille to the Castle of Noya - - - - - 164

XXVI. The Duke of Lancaster sends a Reinforcement to the Siege of Ribadavia:—On that Town being taken by Storm, Maures instantly surrenders - - - - - 169

XXVII. The Lady Philippa of Lancaster is married, by Procuration, to the King of Portugal.—The Ceremony is again performed with great Magnificence and Feastings at Oporto - - - - 176

XXVIII. The Duke of Lancaster marches his Army to Entença.—The Inhabitants send, with the Consent of the Duke, to the King of Castille for Succour - - - 180

Page

CHAP. XXIX. The Duchess of Lancaster and her Daughter visit the King and Queen of Portugal.—The Inhabitants of Entença, receiving neither Answer nor Succour from the King of Castille, surrender to the Duke of Lancaster, according to the Terms of their Treaty 184

XXX. The Count De Foix permits the French Captains to pass through his Territories, on Condition they pay for whatever they take.—They arrive at St. Jean Pied De Port, at the Entrance of Navarre 190

XXXI. Sir John Holland and Sir Reginald De Roye perform a Tilt, in the Town of Entença, before the King and Queen of Portugal and the Duke and Duchess of Lancaster - - - - - 200

XXXII. The King of Portugal promises to enter Castille while the Duke of Lancaster finishes the Conquest of Galicia, and then to unite their Forces - - - - 208

XXXIII. Sir William De Ligmac and Sir Walter De Passac traverse the Kingdom of Navarre with their Army, and arrive at Burgos, where they meet the King of Castille - - - - 210

CHAP.

Page

CHAP. XXXIV. Many Plans are offered to the King of Castille for carrying on the War: he is determined by the Commanders of the French Force to delay an Engagement until the Arrival of the Duke of Bourbon, and to make Excursions from the different Garrisons - - 214

XXXV. The Constable De Clisson makes great Preparations to invade England.—Much Murmuring and Discontent in England against King Richard and his Council - - - - 224

XXXVI. The Constable of France with several others make Preparations to invade England.—The Duke of Brittany practises to prevent this Expedition - - - - 232

XXXVII. The Duke of Brittany summons his Barons and Knights to a Council at Vannes.—Sir Oliver De Clisson and the Lord De Beaumanoir are made Prisoners in the Castle of Ermine, and in great Danger of their Lives - - - - 239

XXXVIII. The Constable De Clisson, through the Exertions of the Lord De Laval, obtains his Liberty, by paying a large Sum of Money, and delivering up to the Duke of Brittany some of his Castles - - - 246

Page

CHAP. XXXIX. The Lord De Beaumanoir is set at Liberty by the Duke of Brittany, that he may collect the Ransom for the Constable, who obtains his Freedom on surrendering the Places agreed on.—The Imprisonment of the Constable is known at the Court of France - - - - - 251

XL. The Duke of Brittany dictates the Terms of the Treaties, for the Surrender of different Places by the Constable.—The Expeditions from Treguier and Harfleur are broken up.—The Constable, on his Deliverance, makes his Complaint to the King of France, and resigns to him his Office of Constable. 255

XLI. The Duke of Gueldres sends a Challenge to France, in Favour of England - - - 262

XLII. Two Breton Captains, having valiantly defended the Town of Orense against the Duke of Lancaster, capitulate on Terms offered by the English - 265

XLIII. The King of Portugal, being repulsed in his Attempts to storm the Castles of Santaren, burns the Town.—He marches to Ferrol in Galicia - - 278

Page

CHAP. XLIV. The King of Portugal, not being able to take Ferrol by Storm, gains it by an Ambuscade, and puts it under the Obedience of the Duke of Lancaster - - 281

XLV. The Army of the Duke of Lancaster come before Noya in Galicia.—The English are received, at the Barriers, by Barrois Des Barres and his Companions - - 285

XLVI. The King of France sends some of his Nobles to demand from the Duke of Brittany the Reason of the Insult offered to him in the Person of his Constable, Sir Oliver De Clisson - - - - - 290

XLVII. Froissart mentions the Person from whom he learnt the Arrest of the Constable De Clisson; who likewise informs him that Sir Bertrand Du Guesclin ought to be called Du Glay-Aquin - - 292

XLVIII. Ambassadors from the King of France wait on the Duke of Brittany respecting the Arrest of his Constable.—The Duke, having heard them, gives them his Answer - - - - - 300

Page

CHAP. XLIX. The Dukes of York and Glocester, Uncles to the King, confederate, with other Barons, against him and his Council.—The People are discontented with the Duke of Ireland.—The Londoners, through the Means of the Duke of Glocester and his Friends, obtain from the King, that a Day should be fixed for those who had managed the Finances to render an Account of them - - - 307

L. The Commissioners of Accounts condemn Sir Simon Burley to be imprisoned in the Tower of London.—Sir Thomas Trivet is killed by a Fall from his Horse.—Sir William Elmham is acquitted of having taken Money for the Surrender of Bourbourg and Gravelines 320

LI. The King of England having left London, Sir Simon Burley is beheaded, to the great Displeasure of the King and Queen.—A Change of the Ministry - - - 326

LII. While the Council, on the State of the Nation, is sitting at London, King Richard, by the Advice of the Duke of Ireland, determines to wage War against his Uncles and the principal Towns - - - 331

Page

CHAP. LIII. The King of England issues his Orders for all capable of bearing Arms in the Neighbourhood of Bristol to march to London.—Sir Robert Tresilian, sent thither as a Spy, is discovered, and beheaded by Command of the King's Uncles - - - - - 337

LIV. When the News of the Death of Sir Robert Tresilian is brought to the Archbishop of York and Sir Nicholas Bramber, they confirm the King in his Intention of making War on his Uncles.—The Duke of Ireland, as Lieutenant-General, leads the Army to Oxford 343

LV. The Duke of Ireland sends three Knights to London to learn Intelligence.—The Dukes of York and Glocester take the Field against the Duke of Ireland and his Army - - - - 348

LVI. The King's Uncles gain a Victory over the Duke of Ireland, who saves himself by Flight with others of his Army - - - - 353

LVII. The Duke of Ireland with some of his Companions escapes into Holland.—The Archbishop of Canterbury is sent by the Dukes of York and Glocester to treat with the King.—He conducts him with Honour to London - - 357

Page

CHAP. LVIII. The King, by the Advice of his Uncles and Council, summons the Nobility and Commoners of the Realm to a Parliament at Westminster, and to renew their Homage to him - - - 364

LIX. The King of Portugal and Duke of Lancaster unite their Forces.—When distressed to cross the River Duero, a Galician Squire, Prisoner of War, directs them to a Ford - - - - 367

THE

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE AMBASSADORS FROM PORTUGAL RETURN WITH SATISFACTORY ANSWERS.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER EMBARKS ON AN EXPEDITION TO RECOVER CASTILLE.

NOT long after this converſation, the duke of Lancaſter had a conference with his brother, the earl of Cambridge, on the affairs of Caſtille and Portugal. The earl, who had been in the latter country upwards of a year, ſaid, that during the reign of don Ferdinand, when he was in Portugal, the canon de Roberſac, and ſir William Windſor and other knights whom he had led thither, had told him of the murmurs of the common people relative to the ſucceſſion, and on this account had preſſed him to carry away his ſon. 'In God's name,' replied the duke, 'the Portugueſe ſquire has informed me moſt circumſtantially of all this matter; and we cannot gain a more convenient entrance to Caſtille than through Portugal. Arragon is too diſtant; and beſides, the king of Arragon has always been more attached to France than to us. It is not right, ſince Portugal aſks from us aſſiſtance, it ſhould be refuſed.'

A parliament was held at Weſtminſter on this ſubject, when it was determined that the duke of Lancaster ſhould have, at the public expenſe, a thouſand or twelve hundred lances, all choſen men, two thousand archers and one thouſand lusty varlets, and that they ſhould receive half a year's pay in advance. The king's uncles were well ſatisfied with this grant: in particular, the duke of Lancaster, to whom, as the matter more nearly concerned him, the command of this army was given.

To expedite the ambaſſadors return to Portugal, who were impatient to ſet out, the king of England wrote very affectionate letters to the king of Portugal, declaring the strict union and intelligence he wiſhed to ſubſist between the ſubjects of each kingdom. He made alſo magnificent preſents to the grand master of St. James and Lawrence Fongaſſe, who were continually with the duke of Lancaster and earl of Cambridge. The day on which they took leave of the king and his council, they dined with the duke of Lancaster and his brother, and had liberty to depart. I believe the duke mentioned in his letters to the king of Portugal, as well as to the ambaſſadors, his wiſh that ſeven galleys, and from eighteen to twenty large veſſels might be ſent from Portugal to the port of Bristol, on the confines of Wales, where the duke and his army would embark.

The ambaſſadors, having promiſed this ſhould be performed, took leave and ſet out for Southampton, where their veſſel was waiting for them.

them. Having embarked, they put to ſea with a favourable wind, and, croſſing the Spaniſh main, arrived in five days at Oporto, where fortunately the king was, and much rejoiced at their return.

They related to the king all they had ſeen and heard in England, regarding king Richard and his uncles, and, in confirmation, delivered letters from them. The king of Portugal, impatient for the aid of the Engliſh to retaliate on the Spaniards, did not delay calling his council, when it was reſolved, that don Alphonſo Vietat, high admiral of Portugal, ſhould get ready ſeven galleys and eighteen ſhips to ſail to England, and bring back the duke of Lancaſter and his army. Don Alphonſo was ſoon ready, and, ſetting ſail from Oporto with favourable winds, arrived in ſix days at Briſtol, where he anchored.

The duke was much rejoiced on hearing of his arrival, for he was at the time in Wales, where the king and all his court were: he haſtened his preparations, as his knights, ſquires and archers were near Briſtol, he having provided at Briſtol two hundred veſſels to tranſport them, under convoy of the Portugueſe fleet, to the continent. It was intended by the duke that his ducheſs and daughters ſhould accompany him to Caſtille and Portugal, where he propoſed nobly marrying them; for he wiſhed not to return very ſoon, and with reaſon, as he perceived affairs in England were badly managed, and the young king governed by wicked

counſellors. This made him the more deſirous of quitting the country.

Before his embarkation, and in the preſence of his brothers, he appointed his ſon, Henry earl of Derby, his lieutenant for whatever concerned him during his abſence, and choſe for him a ſet of able adviſers. This Henry was a young and handſome knight, ſon of the lady Blanche firſt ducheſs of Lancaster. I never ſaw two ſuch noble dames, ſo good, liberal, and courteous, as this lady and the late queen of England, nor ever ſhall, were I to live a thouſand years, which is impoſſible.

When the duke of Lancaster had arranged his affairs in England, and had taken leave of the king and his brothers, he came to Bristol, where he tarried fifteen days, until his horſes to the amount of more than two thouſand, and his stores were ſafely embarked, with ample proviſion of hay, straw, oats, and freſh water.

The duke then entered a handſome galley, having, beſide it, a large veſſel for his houſehold and the ducheſs, who had conſented, with great courage, to accompany him on this expedition; for ſhe expected, on her arrival in her native country, or at least before her return, to be queen of Caſtille. She had with her her own daughter Catharine, and two other daughters of the duke by his former marriage, called Iſabella and Philippa. Iſabella* was married to ſir John

* Her name was Elizabeth. Sir John Holland was created earl

John Holland, conſtable of the army. The marſhal of the hoſt, ſir Thomas Moreaux, was alſo married to another daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, but ſhe was a baſtard, and mother to the lady Morielle, Demoiſelle Marie de St. Hilaire de Hauman *. The lord Percy was admiral of the fleet.

Among the knights who followed the duke of Lancaſter, were ſir Evan Fitzwarren, the lord Lucy, ſir Henry Beaumont, the lord de Pommiers, ſir Richard Burley, the lord Talbot, the lord Baſſet, ſir William Windſor, ſir Thomas Treſham, ſir Hugh Deſpenſer, the lord Willoughby, the lord Bradeſton, ſir William Farrington, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, ſir Hugh Haſtings, ſir Thomas Worceſter, ſir Maubrun de Linieres, ſir Lewis Rochester, ſir John Sounder, ſir Philip Tickel, ſir Robert Clinton, ſir Hugh Calverley, David Holgrave, Thomas Allery, Hobequin Beaucester, and many others with pennons, without including the banners. There were more than one thouſand lances of knights, ſquires, and good men at arms; two

---

earl of Huntingdon and duke of Exeter. She was, after his death, married to ſir John Cornwall, lord Fanhope, but had no iſſue by him. By ſir John Holland ſhe had a ſon (John) who ſucceeded his father.

* I cannot explain who this lady is: nor can I find any where, but in Froiſſart, mention made of this natural daughter of John of Gaunt, nor of the marriage with ſir Thomas Moreaux.

Stowe ſays, ſir Richard Burghley was conſtable of the duke's army, and after him ſir Thomas de la Moleneaux.

thouſand

thouſand archers, and one thouſand ſtout varlets.

It was the month of May when they embarked; and they had the uſual fine weather of that pleaſant ſeaſon. They coaſted the iſles of Wight and Guernſey, ſo that they were diſtinctly ſeen from the Norman ſhores; and a fine ſight it was, for there were upwards of two hundred ſail. It was delightful to obſerve the galleys, which had men at arms on board, coaſt the ſhores in ſearch of adventures, as they had heard the French fleet was at ſea. In truth, they were out before they ſhewed themſelves on the coaſts of Carentan; but, when they perceived them approaching, they retired into the port of Havre.

CHAP. II.

MANY FRENCH KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES OFFER THEIR SERVICES TO THE KING OF CASTILLE.

NOTHING happens but what is known, more particularly if relating to deeds of arms; for knights and ſquires willingly converſe on ſuch topics. The news of the defeat of the king of Caſtille at Aljubarota was ſoon ſpread abroad, and was known in France; for thoſe who had loſt their friends or relations loudly lamented them. Caſtille alone offered a field for deeds of arms, as it was rumoured the duke of Lancaſter, to ſupport his claim on that crown, had aſſembled a large army, and would march thither

thither or to Portugal, and without doubt there would be many battles.

Some knights and ſquires, of the interior part of France, conſulted together on this, and which was the beſt road to Caſtille. Several were of opinion, to march by land, to avoid the dangers of the ſea, and of falling into the hands of the Engliſh fleet; but others ſaid, the road by land was long, and the intentions of the king of Navarre were not quite clear; for he was not much attached to France: that nation, he ſaid, had robbed him of his lands in Normandy; but I know not if his complaints were juſt. They were doubtful what road to take; for, ſhould they go round by Arragon, they would never arrive at their journey's end. At length they reſolved to embark from la Rochelle, where they freighted eighteen veſſels with their baggage and ſtores, but did not take many horſes with them.

When all was ready, and the wind favourable, they put to ſea, and made for the coaſt of Bayonne; for that was their line of direction. They were three hundred knights and ſquires who had volunteered on this expedition. Among them were the lord de Courſy, ſir John Handoye, the viſcount de la Verliere, ſir Peter de Vellamines, ſir Guy le Baveux, ſir John de Châtelmorant, the lord de St. Liger, ſir James de Fougeres, the lord de Bellanes, ſir Triſtan de Langurant, the lord Barrois des Barres, with many more.

They arrived without accident, in the port of St. Andero, in Biſcay, on the 4th day of May 1386,

1386, where they reſted themſelves two days, and had their horſes and baggage diſembarked. When they had laden their horſes, they inquired where they could find the king of Caſtille, and were told that he was then at Burgos, holding a parliament on the affairs of the nation. On leaving St. Andero they followed the road to Burgos, and waited on the king, who was truly glad to ſee them, and aſked the news from France, and which way they had come.

They replied, 'By ſea from la Rochelle,' and that it was rumoured in France the duke of Lancaſter had raiſed a very large force of men at arms and archers, to lead into Caſtille or Portugal; that it was not known where he intended to land, but that the king of Portugal had ſent to him many ſhips and galleys.

The king, on hearing this, became penſive, although it was what he expected, and did not at this meeting diſplay his courage; for he perceived, from every appearance, he ſhould have a ſevere war made on him. However, he entertained the knights very handſomely, and thanked them much for coming. Addreſſing himſelf to ſir Robert de Braquemont, and his brother, ſir John de Braquemont, he ſaid, 'I deſired you both, when you left me laſt year, that on your return, you would bring me from Paris ſome tennis balls, that we might amuſe ourſelves at that game; but I believe it would have been better I had deſired you to bring good helmets and armour; for I fancy we ſhall ſoon have much need of them.'

'Sire,' replied the lord de Braquemont, 'we have brought both; for we can neither fight nor play continually.' In truth, the king of Caſtille ſhewed great attention to theſe knights, feaſted them well, and liberally ſupplied them with every thing they wanted. Some of them having vows to perform, wiſhed to make a pilgrimage to the ſhrine of St. James at Saint Jago, ſince they were in the country; and all of them ſet out in company, having armed themſelves as if they were going to battle: it was fortunate for them they had done ſo, and whoever had adviſed it ſhewed great prudence, as you will ſee hereafter; but I muſt now return to the duke of Lancaſter and his fleet, whom we left coaſting Normandy.

CHAP. III.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, IN HIS VOYAGE TO CASTILLE, ATTACKS THE FRENCH BEFORE BREST, AND FORCES THEM TO RAISE THE BLOCKADE.

JUST as pilgrim falcons, who have long reſted hungry on their perch, are deſirous of flight in ſearch of prey, (if I may uſe the compariſon) were thoſe Engliſh knight and ſquires impatient to try their arms in the field. As they coaſted Normandy, they ſaid to each other,—'Why do not we diſembark in ſome of theſe Norman ports, where we ſhall meet with knights ready to offer us combat?' At last theſe

ſpeeches

ſpeeches reached the ears of the duke, who knew well, before he left England, that ſir John de Malestroit, the lord de Malestroit, the lord de Cambor, Morfonace, with a number of other knights and ſquires from Brittany, had blockaded Brest, under the command of the constable; ſo that when he learnt the eagerneſs his knights expreſſed for ſome deeds of arms, he ordered his admiral, the lord Thomas Percy, and his constable, lord John Holland, to steer the fleet towards Brittany, for he wiſhed to viſit the castle of Brest and his countrymen who were within it.

This order gave great joy to the Engliſh; and don Alphonſo Vietat, who was admiral in chief, and well acquainted with theſe dangerous ſeas, took the lead, for the rest of the fleet to follow him. The weather was now delightful, and the ſea ſo calm, it was a pleaſure to be on it: the fleet advanced with an eaſy ſail, and arrived at the mouth of Brest harbour, where waiting for the tide, they entered it in ſafety. The clarions and trumpets ſounded ſweetly from the barges and the castle. Sir John de Malestroit and his companions were ſeated at table, when the news was brought them of the arrival of the Engliſh fleet: they instantly leaped up and armed themſelves. They knew, that as ſoon as the duke of Lancaster had landed, they should have an engagement; for the English were come to raiſe the blockade.

They were not long in making themſelves ready, and amounted to about three hundred men

men at arms, knights and ſquires. The Engliſh were rejoiced at finding themſelves in Breſt harbour, and that the Bretons were ſtill guarding their blockhouſe, for they were aware an engagement muſt enſue, and they were thirſty for battle.

The duke of Lancaſter and his men landed as near as poſſible to the caſtle, but left their horſes and ſtores on board their ſhips. The ladies, however, went on ſhore to repoſe themſelves. The firſt day they made no attack, only marched out of their quarters, when ſome of the lords fixed their tents and pavilions on the harbour ſide and near the caſtle, where they remained that day and the following night. On the morrow, the conſtable and marſhal's trumpets ſounded, for the army to make ready for an aſſault. When all were armed, they marched in good array towards the caſtle and blockhouſe which had been raiſed in front of it. This was ſo ſolidly built, it would have laſted nine or ten years; for it was ſurrounded with ditches, and had walls, towers and gates of ſtrong timber.

The Engliſh knights, on their arrival, began to ſkirmiſh gallantly at the barriers of the blockhouſe, and attempt to win them. The knights and ſquires within, and there were numbers of good ones, vigorouſly defended themſelves; and, in order to gain more room, they took away the palliſades, which was foolish enough, but they truſted to their ſkill and valour. Many were the fine deeds of arms and much puſhing with lances, and thoſe fared the beſt who could

the

the longest hold their wind. The English, being so numerous, gave the Bretons full employment, and, by dint of courage, won the barriers: within the court of the blockhouse were upwards of one hundred, so that the Bretons were on the point of losing every thing.

Sir John de Malestroit and the viscount de Cambor, seeing this, shouted their cry, and said, 'How, gentlemen, shall we be thus overcome? Advance, advance, and push with vigour, for there must be no sham fighting here: we have only the choice of death or victory.'

Upon this they rallied, and, placing the ends of their lances in the ground, made an obstinate resistance to those who had driven them within the barriers. Hard blows were given on each side; but the English, whether they would or not, were forced to retire, and were beaten back out of the court, so that during the day they could not regain it.

On the other side of the blockhouse was a stone tower situated on a rock, which the Bretons had garrisoned. A severe attack was made on it by the English, for while the fight was going on at the barriers, they had crossed a narrow ditch, and, with pick-axes, advanced up to the walls where they began to work and force out the stones. Those within defended themselves well with what they could lay hands on, but the archers shot so sharply that none dared shew themselves unless strongly shielded.

The pick-axe men continued their work, until the tower, which leaned much on the [illegible] (for they had undermined the foundation) open-

[illegible]ed

ed in two parts. The garriſon ſaved themſelves in the ruins of what remained, for one half fell to the ground. On this, the Engliſh ſet up a grand ſhouting; but, it being now late, the trumpets ſounded the retreat, as they imagined they had done enough for one day. When they marched away, they ſaid to the Bretons, 'Gentlemen, keep a good watch to night, and ſtay where you are, for to-morrow we will viſit you again: you ſee well what ſituation you are in, and that you have nothing to ſhelter you from us.'

It was fully the intention of the Engliſh to return the next day and conquer the blockhouſe with its garriſon, for it was in their power; and in this idea they paſſed the night comfortably, as they had wherewithal ſo to do. There is an old ſaying, that 'John is as wiſe as his maſter,' which I repeat, becauſe if the English are ſubtle in war, the Bretons match them; for they were equally clear ſighted as to what was to their advantage, and what not. They ſaw, if they wished to avoid death or captivity, there was no time to be loſt in packing up their baggage and leaving the blockhouſe. They inſtantly made themſelves ready, and, mounting their horſes, rode towards Hennebon, which was four leagues diſtant. They acted wiſely; for they were not afraid of a purſuit, as the English had not diſembarked any of their horſes.

Sir John de Maleſtroit and his companions arrived ſafely in Hennebon, the gates of which they

they found open, without any ſuſpicion of the English being ſo near.

On the morrow, the trumpets ſounded for a renewal of the attack, and they were anxious to make up for their forced retreat of the preceding day; but news was brought that the Bretons had evacuated the blockhouſe. The English repented ſorely not having laid an ambush, to have prevented the loſs of their prey. The lords ſent varlets to deſtroy the blockhouſe, and ſet it on fire. Thus was the ſiege of Breſt raiſed by the duke of Lancaſter. The duke, ſir John Holland and ſome of the other knights, went into the castle of Brest, carrying the ladies with them, where they had refreshments, and then returned to their quarters. On the morrow, being the third day, they had their veſſels watered; and an the enſuing day they embarked, and continued their voyage.

CHAP. IV.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER ARRIVES AT CORUNNA IN GALICIA.—THE FRENCH, IN THE SERVICE OF SPAIN, ENTER THE CASTLE TO OPPOSE HIM.—THEY SHORTLY AFTER DEFEAT A PARTY OF HIS FORAGERS.

BEFORE the duke ſailed from Breſt, he held a council to determine whether they ſhould steer to Lisbon, Oporto or Corunna. To this council

the Portugueſe admiral and his captains were called, and it laſted ſome time. Don Alphonſo Vietat ſaid, that he had been ordered to England for their ſervice by the king of Portugal, by whom they would be made heartily welcome, ſhould they land in his country; for he was expecting them, and would be much gratified by their coming. Upon this, they determined to make for Oporto, which is but thirty leagues from Liſbon; but they altered their mind, ſaying it would be more honourable to land on the enemy's coaſt, and that by ſo doing they ſhould the more alarm them. They then ſteered for Corunna, and, having a favourable wind, were not more than five days ſailing thither from Breſt: they caſt anchor in the road, to wait for the tide, as it was too low water when they arrived to approach near the ſhore.

I will now ſpeak of the French knights, ſir Barrois des Barres, ſir John de Châtelmorant, the brothers de Braquemont and the reſt, who had ſet out on a pilgrimage to St. Jago de Compoſtella. After they had made their offerings and prayers to the ſhrine of St. James, and were ſitting at their inn, news was brought by thoſe who were guarding the coaſts, that the Engliſh fleet was in ſight, and ſhewed a diſpoſition to land at Corunna. Before their baggage was unloaded, or the ſaddles had been taken from their horſes, they mounted them again, ſaying they muſt haſten back to Corunna, to defend the port; for, ſhould the Engliſh unfortunately gain the caſtle and town, they would

would be maſters of the whole country. Some of the knights borrowed horſes at St. Jago, and made ſuch diſpatch as to arrive at Corunna that night, though it was fourteen country leagues diſtant, and a difficult road to find. They got there very opportunely, just as the English fleet was entering the harbour.

The garriſons in town and castle were well pleaſed at the coming of the French knights, whoſe baggage and armour followed in the courſe of the night. It was a fine ſight, on the morrow, to view all the ſhips and galleys enter the port laden with men at arms and purveyances, with trumpets and clarions ſounding; and thoſe ſignals were anſwered by way of defiance, by the trumpets and clarions of the castle. The Engliſh from this knew there were good garriſons in both town and castle, and that the French had poſſeſſion of the castle.

The lords and their men diſembarked on the ſhore, but did not approach the town, as it was too well fortified, and ſeemed filled with men at arms. They, however, took up their lodgings in ſome huts of fiſhermen and ſeafaring men on the outſide of the walls. They were forced to build other huts, as they were ſo numerous; and the four first days after their landing they were thus employed, as well as in clearing the veſſels of their stores and purveyances, which were in great quantities, and in diſembarking their horſes. They had been fifteen days on board; and though they were plentifully ſupplied with hay, oats and freſh water, yet the rolling

rolling of the ſea had as much affected them as it had done their maſters, which made it needful to walk them about and take every care of them.

When the ſhips had been entirely cleared, the duke was aſked his pleaſure concerning them. He replied, 'Let all the ſailors be well paid, and take the ſhips for their pains: I ſhall diſmiſs them, for I wiſh all the world to know, that I will never recroſs the ſea to England until I be maſter of Caſtille, or die in the attempt.'

Theſe orders were obeyed; and the ſailors being paid to their ſatisfaction, made ſail, ſome to Portugal, Liſbon, Bayonne, Brittany, or England, as they pleaſed, but none remained behind. The duke of Lancaſter and his army were lodged in huts covered with leaves, or in ſuch houſes as they met with; and remained before Corunna upwards of a month amuſing themſelves; for the chief lords had brought hounds for their paſtime, and hawks for the ladies. They had alſo mills to grind their corn, and ovens to bake: for they never willingly go to war in foreign countries without carrying things of that deſcription with them.

The foragers went daily in ſearch of what forage they could find: for, as they were in a poor deſerted country, it was not very plentiful, which forced them to ſeek it at a diſtance. The French knights at Corunna were eager to meet their enemies; and, having learnt how fooliſhly unguarded the foragers were, ſaid, they would ſome day or other catch them, and make them pay, once for all, for what they had pillaged.

They armed themſelves, to the number of about two hundred, and, mounting their horſes, were conducted by guides, at night-fall, through woods, and over mountains, until they came to a mountain, called in that country Eſpinete, by break of day, where they halted, for they had learnt that the Engliſh foragers were out in that part.

The foragers had been abſent from their army two days, collecting as much as they could carry, and were on their return to Corunna; but their only road lay over this mountain of Eſpinete. The inſtant they came there, the French knights ruſhed upon them, ſhouting out, 'Les Barres for the Barrois!' The foragers were thunderſtruck, for the greater part were unarmed: there might be ſix ſcore archers, who gallantly drew themſelves up in array, and wounded, with their arrows, both horſes and riders. When they had expended their arrows, they flung down their bows, and defended themſelves as well as they could, with the other arms they had: ſome fled and hid themſelves, in hopes of eſcaping, Why ſhould I make a long ſtory? Of the three hundred foragers, full two hundred were ſlain: the reſt ſaved themſelves, as well as they could, among buſhes and rocks, where no horſe could venture.

The runaways fled to Corunna, and related their misfortune, and how ſir Barrois des Barres and his company had diſcomfited them.

The army was much ſurpriſed at this; and ſir Thomas Moreaux the marſhal, had five hundred, or more, inſtantly armed and mounted, when, taking

taking the pennon of St. George, he galloped off with them towards the mountain of Eſpinete, to meet the French. When there arrived, he only perceived the ſlaughtered foragers; for the French had returned by the road they had come; but, had they not had good guides, they would never have found it through the incloſures.

The Engliſh, on their return, when within half a league of their army, ſaw the French re-enter the caſtle of Corunna, which vexed them much: but help it they could not. The army blamed the marſhal for having ſuffered the foragers to go without an eſcort of men at arms, when the enemy were ſo near, and in ſuch numbers. The conſtable and duke of Lancaſter were ſo ſharp with him, he was quite aſhamed: he ſaid, that they had been caught, to be ſure, this once, though they had foraged ten times before without any interruption. 'Sir Thomas,' ſaid the duke, 'be more cautious in future; for ſuch things may fall out in one day or hour, as may not happen again in a century.'

CHAP. V.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, AFTER REMAINING BEFORE CORUNNA UPWARDS OF A MONTH, MARCHES HIS ARMY TO SANT JAGO, WHICH SURRENDERS ON CAPITULATION.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter had remained before Corunna upwards of a month, as I have before ſaid, and when his men and horſes were quite recovered, he was adviſed to march towards Sant Jago, where there was a richer and more open country for his cavalry.

The army diſlodged from before Corunna, and marched in three battalions. The marſhal led the van, of three hundred lances and ſix hundred archers; then marched the duke with four hundred ſpears, accompanied by all the ladies. The rear was compoſed of four hundred lances and ſeven hundred archers, accompanied by the conſtable ſir John Holland. They marched very ſlowly, and were three days in going from Corunna to Sant Jago. You muſt know, that the province of Galicia was much alarmed at the arrival of the duke of Lancaſter, for they remembered his power well.

When the marſhal and the van came before the town of St. Jago de Compoſtella, where the body of St. James repoſes, and which many make long

ſuch long journeys to viſit, he found the gates ſhut, as might have been ſuppoſed. There was no other garriſon but its inhabitants; for the French knights refuſed taking upon them the defence of it, to the laſt extremity, as it was not ſtrong enough to withſtand the force under the duke of Lancaſter. The marſhal ſent forward a herald to hear what the townſmen would ſay. The herald found at the barriers the captain of the guard, called don Alphonſo Sene, and ſaid to him, 'A few paces hence is the marſhal of my lord of Lancaſter's army, who would wiſh to ſpeak with you.' 'I am very agreeable to it: let him advance and I will parley with him.' The herald returned to the marſhal with this anſwer.

The marſhal left his army, with only twenty lances, and rode to the barriers, where he found the captain and ſome of the townſmen waiting. The marſhal diſmounted, with twelve others, among whom were the lord Baſſet and ſir William Farringdon, and addreſſed him as follows: 'Captain, and you men of St. Jago, the duke, and ducheſs of Lancaſter your queen, (ſhe being the eldeſt daughter of Don Pedro, your late king) ſend me to know how you mean to act: to open your gates and receive them as your legal ſovereigns, as good ſubjects ought to do; or force me to aſſault your walls, and take your town by ſtorm. But know, that if you ſuffer the place to be ſtormed, all within ſhall be put to the ſword, that others may take warning.'

The captain replied,—'We wiſh to follow the dictates

dictates of reaſon, and acquit ourſelves loyally towards thoſe to whom we owe obedience. We know well that the ducheſs of Lancaſter is daughter to Don Pedro of Caſtille; and if that king had reigned peaceably in Caſtille, ſhe was heireſs to his crown, but things are altered; for the whole kingdom turned to the obedience of his brother, king Henry, by the ſucceſs of the battle of Monteil: we all ſwore fidelity to him; and he was acknowledged king as long as he lived: after his deceaſe we all ſwore obedience to don John, his ſon, who reigns at this moment. Tell us how thoſe of Corunna acted; for it is impoſſible but that, during the month you lay before that place, ſome negotiations and treaties were concluded.'

Sir Thomas Moreaux anſwered,—'You ſpeak truly: we have had indeed negotiations with thoſe of Corunna, otherwiſe we ſhould not have marched hither, though that town is double the ſtrength of yours. I will tell you what they have done: they have entered into a compoſition with us, by declaring they will act in the ſame manner as you do; but, if you force us to the aſſault, they will not follow that example. If Galicia ſurrender to my lord duke and his lady, they will ſurrender alſo, for which they have given us ſuch pledges as are ſatisfactory.'

'Well,' replied the captain, 'we will agree to this: there are many large towns and cities in the realm: ride on, therefore, and leave us in

peace

peace, for we will act as they ſhall, and give you good ſecurity for our performing it.'

'Oh this will never do,' ſaid the marſhal: 'ſuch a treaty will by no means pleaſe the duke and ducheſs; for they are reſolved to reſide in this town, and keep their ſtate as monarchs ſhould in their own kingdoms. Anſwer me briefly what you mean to do: ſurrender, or have yourſelves and town deſtroyed?'

'My lord,' ſaid the captain, 'allow us a little time to conſult together, and you ſhall be ſpeedily anſwered.' 'I conſent,' ſaid the marſhal. The captain then withdrew into the town, and aſſembled the inhabitants at the uſual place where public meetings were held, and related to them the converſation that had paſſed between him and the marſhal. I believe the townſmen at laſt conſented to receive the duke and ducheſs as their monarchs; and to entertain them as ſuch in their town as long as they might pleaſe to reſide there, if don John, king of Caſtille, did not, with his power, attack them. But if it ſhould happen, that after they had made St. Jago their reſidence for a year, or a longer time according to their pleaſure, and ſhould depart from the country, for England, Bordeaux or Bayonne, or wherever elſe they may prefer, the duke muſt engage to leave behind a ſufficient force of men at arms to defend them againſt their enemies, otherwiſe they would ſurrender the town to don John of Caſtille, and hold themſelves acquitted of allegiance to the duke.

Sir Thomas Moreaux cheerfully accepted

theſe terms, and told them they had well ſpoken, and to the purpoſe, and that the duke and ducheſs wiſhed for nothing better. The marſhal returned to his diviſion, and to the duke and ducheſs, who were waiting for him on the plain; to whom he related all that had paſſed and the treaty he had concluded, to which they aſſented, ſaying it was well done.

The army was advancing gaily in battle-array towards the town of St. Jago; when about two French leagues from the place, they were met by a long proceſſion of the clergy, bearing relics, croſſes and ſtreamers, and crowds of men, women and children, and the principal inhabitants carrying the keys of the town, which they preſented, on their knees, with much ſeeming good will, to the duke and ducheſs, (but whether it was feigned or not I cannot ſay) and acknowledged them for their king and queen.

Thus they entered the town of St. Jago, and rode directly to the church of St. James, where the duke, ducheſs, their children and attendants, kneeling offered up their prayers to the holy body of St. James, and made rich gifts at the altar. It was told me that the duke, ducheſs and the ladies, Conſtance and Philippa, were lodged in the abbey, and there held their court. Sir John Holland and ſir Thomas Moreaux, with their ladies, were lodged in the town: the other barons and knights as they could, and the men at arms on the plains round the town. Thoſe who could not find houſes built themſelves huts covered with boughs, of which there were plenty

in

in the country, and made themſelves comfortable with what they could get.

Meat and ſtrong wines were in abundance; of which the archers drank ſo much that they were for the greater part of their time in bed drunk; and very often by drinking too much new wine they had fevers, and in the morning ſuch headachs as to prevent them from doing any thing the remainder of the day, for it was now the vintage.

CHAP. VI.

THE FRENCH KNIGHTS LEAVE CORUNNA, AND JOIN THE KING OF CASTILLE.—THEY ACQUIRE MUCH WEALTH BY PLUNDERING THE COUNTRY, IN ORDER TO FRUSTRATE THE ENGLISH.

SIR John de Châtelmorant, le Barrois des Barres and the other French knights who had guarded Corunna, hearing that the duke of Lancaſter had been peaceably received in St. Jago, held a council on what they ſhould do, ſaying,—'It does not ſignify for us to remain here any longer, ſince we ſhall meet with no fortunate adventures: let us march to Burgos, where the king is, and learn from him what his intentions are: perhaps he may be going to meet the Engliſh, for, if he allow them quietly to eſtabliſh themſelves, by degrees they will be lords of Caſtille. It will be more

more for our honour to go to him than to ſtay here.'

They accordingly made preparations, and leaving the caſtle, procured guides to conduct them to Burgos; otherwiſe they would probably have fallen in with their enemies. They rode through Biſcay, and ſkirted Galicia to Léon, where the king and queen at that time reſided. When theſe knights waited on the king, he received them very kindly, and enquired from them the news, although he knew enough. They told him of their opportune arrival at Corunna, as the Engliſh fleet was entering the harbour, wherein they found ſeven galleys and ſhips of Biſcay laden with wine, of which the English took advantage, for the merchants were soon eaſed of the whole. 'It is thus in war,' replied the king: 'they were unwiſe, when they heard the English fleet were at ſea, not to run ſomewhere elſe for ſafety.' 'In God's name, ſir,' returned the knights, 'they had come thither for ſecurity: they ſaid, their cargoes of wine were for Flanders, and having heard from the ſailors of Saint Andero that the Engliſh were in the bay of Biſcay, and that the king of Portugal had ſent them large ſhips and galleys, it was natural to conclude they would have ſteered for Portugal; but they did the contrary, as it appears, and landing at Corunna, have entered Galicia.' Upon this, the king ſaid,—'Now you knights from France, who are ſo well acquainted with arms, and know more about warlike matters than

my

my ſubjects, from being ſo long trained to them; what are your opinions of the Engliſh? how do you think they will act this ſeaſon?' 'By my faith,' replied ſome (for all gave their opinions) 'we can but ill judge what they will do, for the Engliſh are very reſerved: and we can only gueſs how they will act, or whither they will march. We muſt ſuppoſe that the duke of Lancaſter will remain all the enſuing winter in St. Jago, and his army thereabouts; whence he will overrun Galicia, conquer ſome ſmall forts, and lay in ſtores of proviſion, until the return of ſummer, when treaties will be formed between him and the king of Portugal, for them to act in concert. Perhaps a family-alliance may take place, for you will obſerve that the duke has brought with him his daughters, thoſe that are married as well as the others: now, as there are two unmarried, we imagine the king of Portugal, your adverſary, will have one of them.' 'What would you adviſe me to do?' ſaid the king. 'We will tell you, ſire,' replied the knights. 'Order all your ſtrongeſt caſtles on the borders of Galicia to be well guarded, and deſtroy the ſmaller ones. We learn that it is the cuſtom of this country to fortify churches and towers, whereto the inhabitants of the flat countries carry their wealth and ſtock. This will turn out to their deſtruction and the confuſion of your kingdom; for when the Engliſh take the field, theſe churches and towers will prove no obſtacle to them: on the contrary, they will be recruited from the victual they will there find, and continue the war with more vigour,

and

and conquer the remainder. We therefore adviſe you to deſtroy all ſuchlike forts, while you have time ſo to do, and to give up all, that is not ſecured in large and ſtrong towns, by Michaelmas, or at the lateſt by Andrew's day, to your men at arms; for it is better they ſhould have the advantage and profit, than your enemy. We adviſe you, in particular, to ſend ſome well informed ambaſſadors to the king of France, and to his uncles of Berry and Burgundy, that they may be made acquainted with the real ſtate of your country, and that by the return of ſummer, or ſooner if the ſeaſon will permit us to take the field, you may wage ſuch a war as was never before made in Caſtille. Write preſſing letters to the king and his uncles, that they may aſſiſt you in this neceſſity with ſuch numbers of men at arms that you may reſiſt your enemies and preſerve your kingdom. There is a ſtrong connection between you and the king of France, which was firſt made by your predeceſſor and father; and you may be aſſured, that in your diſtreſs neither the king nor realm of France, which can do no more than England and Portugal united, will deſert you. Believe us, that as ſoon as the king and his council ſhall learn your ſituation, they will take ſuch ſteps as will prevent you from receiving any loſs in this war; for know, that thoſe French knights and ſquires, who are deſirous of glory, will, at the ſlighteſt word, haſten hither to ſeek it, for at this moment they know not where to employ their arms. We mention this, becauſe there is now a peace

between

between the French and Flemings, and a truce with the Engliſh and French on the other ſide the Loire until St. John the Baptist's day enſuing. You will therefore ſee men at arms, knights, and ſquires, fly hither from France as well to advance their own honour as to ſee this country and meet the Engliſh. But, ſire, we particularly recommend the deſtruction of theſe ſmall forts, if you wiſh to preſerve you country.'

The king replied, 'You have adviſed me loyally and I shall instantly follow your counſel, and order, without further conſultation, all ſuch forts to be demolished as are not tenable, and make you a preſent of whatever may be found in them.' The knights ſaid, he had well ſpoken, that they would attend to that buſineſs, and aſſiſt him in defending and preſerving his realm.

This gift of the king of Castille to the knights from France and thoſe about his perſon was worth to them two hundred thouſand francs, eſpecially to thoſe first comers, who had thrown themſelves into Corunna when the duke of Lancaster had arrived, and purſued his march to Sant Jago.

All the ſmall forts, churches and towers, which had been embattled in Caſtille, were abandoned and destroyed, and the poor peaſants diſappointed in their expectations of having therein depoſited their wealth and stock in ſafety; for the knights and ſquires went thither with their men and ſeized on all the wines, corn, and cattle, and drove them to their quarters; but the gold and ſilver which they found, and

the

the ſums they made the peaſants pay for their ranſoms, or to have their ſtock back again, went into their own purſes, unknown to any one but themſelves. Some of the poorer ſquires, more bold and cunning than the reſt, (for there are always ſome of that ſort) who had left their homes miſerably mounted or on foot, were ſo active that they had now fine courſers and genets for pleaſure, with five or ſix ſilver girdles, and purſes with a thouſand or two of francs in them.

Thus did theſe companions, who firſt entered Caſtille, make fortunes, which the flat countries paid; for every place was rifled and devoured even by their own countrymen, who would not that their enemies ſhould be any gainers by their invaſion.

When it was told in France how poor knights and ſquireswere enriching themſelves in Caſtille, where they ſpared neither the lands of friends nor thoſe of their foes, their companions were more eager than ever to leave France, in the hopes of being ſharers with them.

CHAP. VII.

GREAT PREPARATIONS ARE MADE THROUGHOUT FRANCE FOR THE INVASION OF ENGLAND.—THE DEATH OF FRANCIS ATREMEN.

THE king of France, his uncles and council, had been well informed of the intended expedition of the duke of Lancaster, before he had ſailed from England, (for fame ſpreads all things abroad) and that it was meant againſt Caſtille. It was for this reaſon the duke of Burgundy had concluded ſo eaſily a peace with the Flemings, and in order that the king of Caſtille might have aſſiſtance; for the king of France was bound to aid him, as he had always ſuccoured France, when called upon with men and ſhips. Add to this, the great deſire the young king of France had ever ſhewn to invade England with a powerful army and navy. In this he was joined by all the chivalry of the realm, but eſpecially by the duke of Burgundy, the conſtable of France, and the count de St. Pol, although he had married king Richard's ſiſter, as well as by the lord de Coucy.

Theſe lords ſaid, 'Why ſhould not we, for once, make a viſit to England to ſee the country and its inhabitants, and learn the way thither, as the Engliſh have done in France? This year, therefore, 1386, we will go thither, as well to break

break up the expedition of the duke of Lancaſter, and force him to return home, as to give alarm to the Engliſh, and ſee how they will behave.' Greater armaments were made in France than had hitherto been done. Heavier taxes were impoſed on all the towns and country than for one hundred years, and ſuch ſums had never been raiſed, nor were ever greater preparations made by ſea and land. The whole ſummer, until September, was employed in grinding flour, and making biſcuit in Arras, Bethune, Lille, Douay, Amiens, St. Omer, and in all the towns near to Sluys, for it was the plan of the king to embark at Sluys, ſail for England, and deſtroy the whole country.

Many of the rich men of France were forced to pay a third or fourth of their property, in order to build veſſels of a ſufficient ſize; and the poorer ſort were taxed as much as they were worth, to pay the men at arms.

There was not a veſſel of any ſize from the port of Seville to Pruſſia, that the French could lay their hands on, but was ſeized by fair or foul means for the king of France. Proviſions arrived from all quarters. Very great quantities of wine, ſalted meats, oats, truſſes of hay, onions, verjuice, biſcuit, flour, butter, the yolks of eggs in powder and rammed in barrels, and every other neceſſary, were ſent from Flanders, ſo that, in future times, thoſe who have not been eye-witneſſes will never believe the accounts.

Lords and knights, at great diſtances, were written to, to requeſt they would accompany the

king of France in this expedition: even as far as Germany, Savoy, and the lands of the count d'Armagnac. The earl of Savoy was retained with five hundred lances; as were alſo the count d'Armagnac and the dauphin of Auvergne; and, becauſe theſe lords were ſo diſtant, they ſent before them vaſt proviſion of ſtores; and it was wonderful to ſee the quantity of coſtly articles that came to Flanders, by land and ſea, through Damme, Bruges and Sluys.

When St. John's day was come, all the great veſſels in Holland, Zealand, Middleburgh, Dordrecht, Schoenhoven, Leyden, the Brille, and other places near the ſea, were fought for to carry this army from Sluys; but the Hollanders and the reſt ſaid, that if they wanted their veſſels or their ſervices, they muſt pay them down the ſums agreed on, otherwiſe they would not ſtir. They were wiſe in ſo doing; for they were inſtantly paid, before they would leave their houſes or harbours.

Never, ſince God created the world, were there ſeen ſuch numbers of large ſhips, as filled the harbours of Sluys and Blanckenburgh; for, when they were counted, in the month of September, this ſame year, they were twelve hundred and eighty-ſeven ſhips. Their maſts, on coming from ſea, appeared like a thick foreſt.

The conſtable's ſhip was building at Treguier, in Brittany; and the conſtable had there conſtructed a town of frame-work, of large timber, which was to be put together, on their landing in England, for the lords to retreat to, as a place

of ſafety, and to be lodged therein, to prevent any danger that might ariſe from nightly attacks. This town was ſo conſtructed, that when they diſlodged, it could be taken to pieces, roofs and all; and many carpenters and other workmen, who had been employed on it, were engaged, at very high wages, to attend the properly taking it to pieces and erecting it again.

I never heard the name of the duke of Brittany, nor had he laid up in Flanders ſtores of any kind, nor of the duke of Touraine, the king's youngeſt brother, nor of the count de Blois, as among the number of thoſe who were to accompany the king on this occaſion. But all could not go: it was neceſſary ſome ſhould remain behind in France, to guard the realm.

Whoever had been at Damme, Bruges or Sluys at this time, and had ſeen how buſily all were employed in loading the veſſels with hay in truſſes, garlic, onions, biſcuit in ſacks, peaſe, beans, cheeſe-bowls, barley, oats, rye, wheat, wax-candles, houſings, ſhoes, boots, helmets, ſpurs, knives, hatchets, wedges, pick-axes, hooks, wooden pegs, boxes filled with ointments, tow, bandages, coverlids for ſleeping on, horſe-ſhoe nails, bottles of verjuice and vinegar, iron, ſtone ware, pewter and wooden pots and diſhes, candleſticks, baſons, vaſes, fat pigs, haſters, kitchen furniture, utenſils for the buttery, and for the other offices, and every article neceſſary for man or beaſt, would have been ſtruck with aſtoniſhment. The eagerneſs and pleaſure were

ſo

ſo great in the beholding it, that had any one had a fever or toothache, he would have got rid of them by running from one place to another. The converſations which were overheard between the French ſhewed they conſidered England would be ruined and deſtroyed, beyond reſource, the men put to death, and the women and children carried in ſlavery to France.

The king of England and his council were duly informed of theſe grand preparations; and it was confidently affirmed and believed that the French would not fail to invade the country, as they had ſworn they would do ſo. It is not ſtrange that ſuch formidable preparations ſhould require the utmoſt attention, nor would it be matter of ſurpriſe if the Engliſh were at firſt much alarmed, for immenſe as theſe armaments were, they were greatly magnified; and it was not certain whether they were meant to invade England or attack Calais by ſea and land; for the Engliſh knew well there was not a town the French were more deſirous of regaining than Calais.

On this account, great ſtores of corn and other grain, ſalted meat and fiſh, wines and brandies, were ſent from England to Calais. Sir Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir William Elmham, the earl of Angus, ſir Walter Warren, ſir Walter Paul, ſir William Touchet, ſir Lewis de Montalban, ſir Colars d'Ambreticourt, were ordered thither to defend it, and with them five hundred men at arms and as many archers. The earl of Arundel and lord Henry Deſpenſer put to ſea with forty large

ſhips, having on board three hundred men at arms, and ſix hundred archers completely armed.

It was, on the other hand, reported in ſeveral places in France, Hainault and Picardy, that this armament was not deſtined for either England or Calais, but that, when it was completed, it would inveſt the town of Ghent. I was told the men of Ghent were ſeriouſly alarmed: but they were to blame if they ſhewed any fear, for the duke of Burgundy, their lord, wiſhed them nothing but proſperity, although Francis Atremen, ſhortly after the peace, was ſlain at Ghent.

The duke was no way implicated in his death, for he bore him no hatred, although, during the war of Ghent, he had performed many gallant deeds in the ſervice of his townſmen, as have been truly related in this hiſtory. If Francis Atremen came to ſuch an end, he has nobody to blame but himſelf; for, had he believed Peter du Bois, this misfortune would not have befallen him.

Peter du Bois gave him notice what he might expect at the concluſion of the peace between the duke of Burgundy and Ghent, on their return to Ghent from Tournay. When Peter was making his preparations to accompany the lord Bourchier to England, he ſaid, 'Francis, what do you ſay? will you not go to England with us? for now is the time.' 'No,' replied he, 'I will remain in Ghent.' 'And how,' ſaid Peter, 'can you ſuppoſe you will live there in quiet? for there are many who mortally hate both you and me. I would not remain there for any ſum of money,

for

for there is no dependance on the populace. Have you never heard how they murdered Jacob von Artaveld, who had done them much ſervice, and given them ſuch good advice, and had on all occaſions aſſiſted them? and yet, from the ſpeeches of a linen-weaver they ſlew him, without any of the principal inhabitants interfering in his behalf. On the contrary, they diſſembled, and in their hearts were rejoiced at his death. Now, Francis, juſt ſo it will happen to you, and to me, if I ſtay; but that I will not, ſo I bid you adieu.'

'It will not ſo happen,' replied Francis, 'for my lord of Burgundy has pardoned all, and offers me, if I chooſe to reſide with him, to be equerry of his ſtables with four horſes at my command, and shews me, as well as the lord Guy de la Tremouille and the other knights of his houſehold, every mark of affection.'

'In God's name,' ſaid Peter, 'I do not ſpeak of my lord of Burgundy, nor of his knights, for they are well inclined to keep peace, but of the Ghent men. There are ſome to whom you have not always behaved well: have you forgotten the lord de Harzelles, whom you cauſed to be aſſaſſinated, and ſuch and ſuch others. Know, that the revenge of their relations will fall on you within a short time, if you remain: take my advice: rather than live here, accept the duke's offer.'

'I will conſider of this,' anſwered Francis; 'but I am determined not to go to England.' Thus the converſation ended. Francis Atremen

ſtaid

ſtaid in Flanders, and Peter du Bois, as you have before heard, went with lord Bourchier to England. What followed you ſhall hear. Soon after peace had been proclaimed throughout Flanders, an edict was publiſhed in all towns dependant on the duke of Burgundy, forbidding any one whatever to wear armour or ſwords, or to have arms carried by their followers.

Francis Atremen, during the war of Ghent, had been one of its principal rulers, and one who had the moſt attention paid him. Whenever he walked the ſtreets he was followed by thirty or forty varlets, who were well pleaſed at any orders he choſe to give them. He had kept this ſtate ſo long, that he was loth to give it up, and was deſirous of being followed by three or four armed with ſwords or defenſive ſtaves. When this proclamation of the duke of Burgundy was made, he never imagined it any way concerned him, ſo much did he fancy himſelf in favour with the duke and the town: but he was miſtaken; for, ſeven or eight days after the publication of the edict, the duke's bailiff came to him and ſaid,—'Francis, you ſeem ſuſpicious and afraid of our lord's officers, or why do you now go armed through the town of Ghent, followed by your varlets, armed alſo, with ſwords, as in times of war? We are much diſpleaſed thereat, and command you, in the name of the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, that you lay them aſide.'

Francis, who in fact meant no ill, but kept up this ſtate through pomp, replied,—'Bailiff, I ſhall

ſhall willingly obey your orders, as is right; for, thank God, I bear no malice nor wiſh evil to any one; but I thought I was ſo well conſidered in the town, that I might have had my ſword and armour borne after me without its being objected to.'

'You are miſtaken,' ſaid the bailiff: 'it is the townſmen, to whom you have done ſo many ſervices, who have interfered, and tell me they are ſurpriſed how I ſuffer it; for it ſeems to them you want to renew a war, for which they have no inclination. I therefore beg of you, Francis, that you will ſo act, as that I may hear no more of it; for, if you do not obſerve the edict, I ſhall look on you as an enemy to the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy.'

The bailiff of Ghent departed. Francis Atremen returned to his houſe, and ordered his varlets to lay aſide their arms. He became melancholy; and, for the greater part of the times he went abroad, it was alone, or having one varlet or a boy attending him. Not long after this converſation with the bailiff, a feſtival was kept at the monaſtery of St. Peter, without Ghent, whither Francis went alone, or only attended by a ſingle varlet, neither having ſwords nor arms. He was watched, and followed by a baſtard of the late lord de Harzelles, anxious to revenge his death, in which common fame reported Francis Atremen to have been ſtrongly guilty. The baſtard, having provided himſelf with arms, followed him out of the town, and when at a proper diſtance, and no one near, he called out

to

to him, 'Francis, you are a dead man: you put to death my father, and I will do the like to you.' As Francis turned round, the baſtard, who was a ſtout fellow, ſtruck him ſo violent a blow on the head, that it ſplit his ſkull to the neck, and felled him dead. The baſtard walked quietly away, for none purſued him, and no more was ſaid. Francis Atremen came by his death for not following the advice of Peter du Bois.

When news of this reached England, and came to the knowledge of Peter du Bois, he but ſlightly pitied him, ſaying, 'Before I left Ghent, I truly told him what would happen; but he would not mind what I ſaid, and has ſuffered for it. See if any one will meddle in the matter: certainly none of thoſe who, during the war, ſeemed ſuch warm friends to him, and honoured him ſo much. It was for fear of ſuch events that I followed the advice of lord Bourchier, and came with him to England.'

CHAP. VIII.

THE FRENCH PUT THEMSELVES TO USELESS EXPENSE ON THEIR MARINE.—THE ENGLISH MAKE JUDICIOUS PREPARATIONS TO OPPOSE THEM.

WE will return to the preparations going forward at Damme and Sluys, which were ſo formidable, that the like was never remembered in

in the memory of man, nor is there any written account of ſuch. Money was no more ſpared than if it rained gold, or was pumped up from the ſea. The great barons of France had ſent their ſervants to Sluys to embark every thing they might have occaſion for in this expedition; for all were impatient to croſs over; and the king, young as he was, ſhewed greater impatience than any.

Each lord ſtrove to have his veſſel the beſt ſupplied, and the moſt ornamented with painting and gilding, with their arms emblazoned on them and on the flags. Painters made a good harveſt, for they were paid whatever they aſked, and even with this there were not a ſufficiency. The maſts were painted from top to bottom; and ſome, by way of magnificence, were even covered with ſheets of fine gold, above which were emblazoned the arms of the different lords to whom the veſſels belonged. It was told me, particularly, that ſir Guy de la Tremouille expended ſuch ſums in ornamenting and painting his own ſhip that they amounted to upwards of two thouſand francs. Their banners, pennons and ſtandards were ſo very grand, as to ſurpriſe all who ſaw them. No ornament nor decoration could be imagined, but theſe lords employed it on their veſſels. The poor of France paid for all: the taxes were ſo grievous in that country, that the rich complained, and the poorer ſorts ran away.

All which was going forward in France, Flanders, Bruges, Damme and Sluys was known in England, and with many additions to the real truth.

truth. The people in ſeveral places were exceedingly alarmed, and generally the prieſts made proceſſions in many towns three times a-week; where, with much devotion, they offered up their prayer to God, to avert this peril from them. There were upwards of one hundred thouſand who were deſirous the French ſhould come to England, ſaying, to comfort the weak hearted, 'Let them come: by God, not a ſoul ſhall return back to tell their ſtory.' Such as were in debt, and had not any intention of paying nor wherewithal to do ſo, were delighted, and ſaid to their creditors, 'Hold your tongues: they are coining florins in France, and we will pay you with them:' and thus they lived extravagantly, and expended largely, for credit was not refuſed them. Whenever they were aſked to pay, they replied, 'How can you aſk for money? is it not better that we ſpend it than that Frenchmen ſhould find it and carry it away?' Thus were many thouſand pounds ſterling fooliſhly ſpent in England.

The king of England was during this time in Wales with the earl of Oxford, who governed England, for without his conſent nothing was done. The king's privy council conſiſted of ſir Simon Burley, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir Robert Beauchamp, ſir John Saliſbury, ſir Michael de la Pole, and alſo the biſhop of Norwich and ſir William Neville, brother to the lord Neville. Theſe counſellors did with the king as they pleaſed, and carried him whitherſoever they liked; for neither had his uncles of

Cambridge

Cambridge and Buckingham been able to retain any influence, nor could they act, without knowing whether it were agreeable to the above-named counſellors. All theſe diſcords were the topic of converſation in France, and incited them to haſten their preparations. They wiſhed to force the duke of Lancaſter to return from Caſtille, but would not on that account have given up their invaſion.

The lords, prelates and citizens of the principal towns in England, having obtained exact information that the French were nearly ready to put to ſea, held an aſſembly, in which they debated what was proper to be done. The king was written to by his uncles to return to London, as the whole country was much diſſatisfied with him and his adviſers. The king and his council, not daring to refuſe, left Wales, where he and his queen had reſided a conſiderable time. On his arrival at Windſor, he ſtaid ſome days, and, there leaving his queen, came to his palace of Weſtminſter. Thoſe who had any buſineſs to tranſact went thither to the king; and before the parliament was holden, a council was called to conſider how they might appeaſe the great diſcontents which appeared in the country.

In this parliament, which was attended by the king, his uncles, and all the nobles and prelates of the realm, the earl of Saliſbury, a prudent and valiant man, ſpoke as follows: 'Your majeſty, and my lords preſent, need not be ſurpriſed if our adverſary, the king of France, propoſes to invade us; for since the death of the moſt potent and

ſagacious

ſagacious prince, Edward of happy memòry, our ſovereign lord, this realm has incurred ſeveral riſks of being deſtroyed by its own ſubjects and the commotions of peaſants. It is alſo perfectly well known in France that we diſagree among ourſelves, and are torn by faction, which makes them imagine their enterpriſe cannot fail of ſucceſs. The danger is indeed great, for he muſt be weak who fears not his enemy. While we remained united, the king with the people, and the people with the king, we were victorious and powérful, and there were none able to do us any eſſential injury. It is therefore neceſſary, (and never was any thing in England more preſſing) for us to act in unity, and reform what may be wrong, if we wiſh to preſerve our honour, as well as for us to inquire into the ſtate of our ports, that ſuch defence may be made that the kingdom be not any way hurt, nor we accuſed of neglect by the country. This realm has been long in its flower; and you know that what is in flower has greater need of attention than if in fruit. We muſt therefore act as if it was in flower; for, ſince theſe laſt ſixty years, thoſe knights and ſquires who have gone out of it have acquired more renown than any others of what nation ſoever. Let us exert ourſelves that our honour be preſerved untarniſhed as long as we live.'

This ſpeech of the earl of Saliſbury was attentively liſtened to; and the lords ſaid, it would be right to follow his advice. I will not longer dwell on what was debated at this meeting, for I do not

not pretend to know every thing; but I do know, that after proper care had been taken, as I have already noticed, for the defence of Calais, all the coaſt of England, where it was thought the French would land, was well guarded.

The earl of Saliſbury, becauſe his eſtate was in the iſle of Wight, which lies oppoſite to the country of Caux in Normandy, was ordered thither to guard and defend it with the men at arms and archers of that country. The earl of Devonſhire was ſent to Southampton with two hundred men at arms and ſix hundred archers, to guard that haven. The earl of Northumberland to the port of Rye, with the ſame number of men at arms and archers. The earl of Cambridge was ſent to Dover with five hundred men at arms and twelve hundred archers. His brother, the earl of Buckingham, to Sandwich, with ſix hundred men at arms and twelve hundred archers. The earls of Stafford and Pembroke to Orwell, with five hundred men at arms and twelve hundred archers. Sir Henry and ſir Faulx Percy to Yarmouth, with three hundred men at arms and ſix hundred archers. Sir Simon Burley was appointed governor of Dover caſtle only.

Every port and harbour from the Humber to Cornwall was well provided with men at arms and archers, and watchmen were poſted on all the hills near the ſea-coaſts oppoſite to France and Flanders. The manner of poſting theſe watchers was as follows: they had large Gaſcony caſks filled with ſand, which they placed one on the other, riſing like columns: on theſe were planks,

where

where the watchmen remained night and day on the look-out. They were ordered, the moment they ſhould obſerve the fleet of France ſteering towards land, to light torches and make great fires on the hills to alarm the country, and the forces within ſight of theſe fires were to haſten thither. It had been reſolved to allow the king of France to land, and even to remain unmoleſted for three or four days: they were firſt to attack the fleet, and deſtroy it and all their ſtores, and then to advance on the king of France, not to combat him immediately, but to harraſs his army, ſo that they might be diſabled and afraid to forage; for the corn countries were all to be burnt, and England at beſt is a difficult foraging country; by which plan they would be ſtarved and easily deſtroyed.

Such was the plan laid down by the council of England. Colcheſter bridge was ordered to be broken down, for a deep river runs under it, which flows through Eſſex, and falls into the Thames, opposite the iſland of Shepey. The Londoners, would pull this bridge down for the greater ſecurity of their town.

If the taxes were burdenſome on towns and perſons in France, I muſt ſay they were not much lighter in England, and the country ſuffered from them a long time afterwards; but they were paid cheerfully that they might be more effectually guarded. There were at this time ten thouſand men at arms and one hundred thouſand archers in England, although the duke of Lancaſter had led ſo large a force to Caſtille.

I will

I will now ſpeak a little of this duke, and of the interview between him and the king of Portugal, and then return to England, for the matter preſſes, and I wiſh to ſpeak of each and of their reſpective tranſactions.

CHAP. IX.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL, WHEN INFORMED OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER'S ARRIVAL AT SANT JAGO, WRITES HIM FRIENDLY LETTERS.—THE KING OF CASTILLE DEMANDS SUCCOURS FROM FRANCE.—THE TOWN OF ROUELLES IN GALICIA TAKEN BY THE ENGLISH.

YOU have before heard of the arrival of the duke of Lancaſter with a large army at Corunna; how that city, but not the caſtle, had ſurrendered to him on terms, similar to thoſe which were impoſed on the other towns in Caſtille, by which means the city was neither attacked nor hurt; you have alſo heard how he and his family had taken poſſeſſion of Sant Jago de Compoſtella, where he intended to reside, until he ſhould have ſome intelligence from the king of Portugal. Don John, as ſoon as he knew the duke to be at St. Jago, was much rejoiced, thinking, that when united, they could carry on an advantageous war againſt Caſtille. He ordered the moſt friendly letters

letters to be written to the duke and ducheſs, and to be forwarded inſtantly by ſpecial meſſengers. The receipt of ſuch letters gave much pleaſure to the duke and ducheſs; for they had great dependance on the king of Portugal, and knew that without his aid, they would never be enabled to do any thing effectual againſt Caſtille. They, therefore, made rich preſents to the meſſengers, and returned the warmeſt anſwers. The duke, in his anſwer, gave the king to underſtand, that he ſhould have much pleaſure if an interview took place between them, as he wanted to have ſome conferences with him.

While all theſe marks of affection were reciprocally tendered and received between the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter, the king of Caſtille was ſtrengthening himſelf by every means in his power. He frequently ſtated his ſituation to the court of France, and was urgent in his demands for aſſiſtance to defend his realm; for he expected, when the ſeaſon would allow, that there would be a vigorous war made on him, as the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter would then form a junction, and would be in ſuch force as would overrun all Caſtille, unleſs he could raiſe an army to oppoſe them.

The king of France and his council, in their anſwer, deſired the king of Caſtille not to be uneaſy; for, before the month of January was paſſed, they would give the Engliſh ſo much to do at home, as to prevent them from knowing which way to turn themſelves; that when England

ſhould

ſhould be completely deſtroyed, they would come to his aid by ſea, through Galicia or Portugal; and if their enemies ſtill remained in that country, they would drive them out of it in a handſome manner, and within the year put an end to all theſe wars.

The king of Caſtille contented himſelf with this anſwer as well as he could: indeed, he could not help himſelf; for none came to him from France, excepting thoſe who had defended the caſtle of Corunna. All knights and ſquires, however great their diſtance in the kingdom, haſtened to Paris, Lille and Douay: and the whole of that country, to the extent of fourteen leagues, was filled with men at arms and their followers. The multitudes were ſo great, that thoſe who ſuperintended the ſhipping, notwithſtanding the number of veſſels, declared they could not be all tranſported at once, by at leaſt forty thouſand men.

It was ordered, that no one was to be received on board the tranſports but true men at arms: and no knight was to have more than one varlet, nor any great baron more than two ſquires. No horſes were to be embarked but thoſe of the principal lords; and this was ſo ſtrictly obſerved at Sluys that the names of none were written down for the paſſage, nor received on board, but good men at arms. There was ſuch a raſcally crew in Flanders, in the country of Tournay, and in the caſtlewicks of Lille, Douay and Artois, that they devoured and plundered every thing to the great loſs of the

poor inhabitants, on whom they lived, though they dare not complain for fear of their lives. They were more deſtructive than the Engliſh would have been if quartered in that country. The king of France and his lords had many fears; for, ſhould they leave theſe ſcoundrels behind, they would unite and maſter the country; and this would have happened, had the invaſion taken place, and been unſucceſsful.

During the reſidence of the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter at St. Jago, ſeveral of their knights and ſquires made excurſions into the country, and ſupported themſelves in the beſt manner in which they were able, on whatever they could find. It fell out, that ſir Thomas Moreaux, marſhal of the army, in company with ſir Maubrun de Linieres, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, Thierry and William de Soumain, and about two hundred ſpears and five hundred archers, when in Galicia, came before the town of Rouelles, ſeven leagues from Sant Jago. He had heard that the townſmen would not acknowledge the duke of Lancaſter for king; and had ſlain his foragers, who, on their return, had paſſed by their barriers. They had ruined their roads ſo much, that the only tolerable one was cloſe to the town; and, when they found a good opportunity, they ruſhed out, and, like thieves as they were, murdered all paſſers, whether foragers or not. Complaints had been made of their conduct to the marſhal, who was determined to apply a remedy, that being a part of his official duty. He and his companions diſmounted,

mounted, when near the town. The watch had before ſounded his horn, which had prepared the inhabitants, and they had cloſed the gates and mounted the battlements; for it would not have fared well to any who had remained without the wall.

The marſhal, ſeeing from their appearance it muſt be aſſaulted, and having muſed a while, ſaid to ſir John d'Ambreticourt and Thierry de Soumain,—'Mount your horſes, and ride round the town to ſee where we may the beſt make our aſſault, and with the leaſt loſs of our men.' Having mounted their horſes, they ſoon rode round the place, for it was of no great circuit, and carefully examined every part of it. On their return to the marſhal, who was waiting for them, they ſaid,—'Sir, this town has but two gates: you are at one, and the other is directly oppoſite: theſe are the two places which ſeem to us eaſieſt of attack; for the ditches round the town are deep, difficult of deſcent and aſcent, on account of thorns and brambles.'

'I believe you are right,' replied the marſhal: 'I will remain here with a part of our men, and you, Maubrun, ſhall take the other and commence the attack. I know not what may be the event, but I with joy ſee thoſe fellows, who, from their battlements, obſerve all we are doing. Look at them, they are as ſulky-looking as monkies eating pears, which children want to take from them.' His companions burſt out a laughing at this expreſſion, and caſting up their eyes to ſee the villains, (which they

had not before thought of) went away with Maubrun and his pennon. They were about one hundred lances and three hundred archers, who advanced ſlowly to the oppoſite gate and halted.

Attacks were made on both gates with great gallantry; but the men of Rouelles, from their battlements, defended themſelves with ſtones and darts, ſo that the archers and croſs-bow men were unable to act with ſucceſs, and many were ſeverely wounded. However, as the barriers were defenceleſs, for all had retired within the walls, the Engliſh deſtroyed the paliſades and advanced up to the gates. They battered them ſo as to make them ſhake again; but the inhabitants, aware of the miſchief which might enſue from their gates being forced, came down from the battlements, and placed againſt them faggots and large beams of wood. Women and others brought earth and ſtones, with which they filled caſks, and theſe they arranged againſt the gates, cloſing up the whole of the entrances. While this was going on, others on the battlements, over the gateways, threw down large ſtones and bars of iron, ſo that none dared venture too near, for fear of theſe things which killed whoever they hit. Thus did theſe peaſants hold out their town againſt the Engliſh, who ſuffered indeed no loſs until night; but they were forced to retreat to a deſerted village, a long league diſtant, to ſeek for lodgings, where they remained until the morrow.

The ſpies ſent after them brought back word that they had taken up their quarters at the village

lage of Lyrias, but it ſeemed as if they would, on the next day, renew the attack. The townſmen, on hearing this, ſaid among themſelves; 'The ſhorteſt follies are the beſt: we can never be blamed for ſurrendering to the duke of Lancaſter or to his marſhal, having, ourſelves, held out one whole day againſt them, without advice or aſſiſtance from any gentleman whatever. This we cannot long perſiſt in, and, having begun the attack, the enemy will, of courſe, renew it, ſince they know the way. It will, therefore, be better to ſurrender before they begin an aſſault; for, if we be taken by ſtorm, we ſhall loſe our lives as well as our money.'

All agreed to this: and it was determined that, if the Engliſh returned on the morrow, they would go out to meet them, and ſurrender the town on having their lives and properties ſpared. In truth, the Engliſh made their appearance ſhortly after ſun-riſe, freſh and eager to renew the attack. When they were obſerved, four of the principal townſmen were ſent out to conclude a treaty.

As the marſhal advanced under his pennon, caſting his eyes around, he perceived theſe four men, and ſaid; 'I believe there are ſome from Rouelles, who want to parley with us: make them come forward.' This was done; and when they were near the marſhal, they caſt themſelves on their knees, and ſaid, 'My lord, the inhabitants of Rouelles have ſent us to parley with you; will you hear us?' 'Yes,' replied the marſhal; what have you to ſay?' 'My lord, we come

to

to offer the ſurrender of our town, if you will take us and all we poſſeſs under your protection; and we will acknowledge the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter for our ſovereigns, in like manner as thoſe of Corunna and Sant Jago have done.'

'I will take you, and all that belongs to you, under my protection,' anſwered the marſhal; 'but I will not enſure your proviſions, for men at arms muſt live.' The deputies ſaid, that, 'that was reaſonable; and the country abounded in proviſions of all ſorts; but wait here a moment, that we may return to the town and relate what you have ſaid, for we will keep the agreement, and we truſt you will do the ſame.'

'Yes, on my faith will I,' replied ſir Thomas; 'but make haſte back.' Upon this the four men returned to the town, to relate how ſir Thomas had agreed to accept their terms, except in the article of proviſions. They ſaid, 'God grant it may be ſo; for you have ſucceeded better than we expected.' They then diſencumbered the gate of the caſks, beams and faggots, and opening it wide, advanced to the barriers with the keys in their hands. When the marſhal approached, he and his companions diſmounted; and the townſmen on their knees, preſenting the keys, ſaid,—'My lord, you are ſent hither, we learn, by the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter: we therefore offer you the keys, and ſurrender our town, as agreed on between you and our men.' 'Upon theſe terms I accept the keys,' replied the marſhal; and he and his men

men entered the town, where they quartered themſelves here and there, in the beſt manner they could. Sir Thomas Moreaux remained there the whole day. On the morrow, before his departure, he ſaid to ſir Thomas Maubrun de Linieres,—'I give this town up to you and your men: you will make a good garriſon of it.' 'By St. George, and ſo I will,' replied ſir Maubrun; 'for I like it well.'

Sir Maubrun de Linieres remained in garriſon in Rouelles, having under him ſixty ſpears and one hundred archers. Sir Thomas Moreaux returned to the duke and ducheſs at Sant Jago.

CHAP. X.

THE MARSHAL OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER'S ARMY ATTACKS AND GAINS BY TREATY THE TOWN OF VILLECLOPE IN GALICIA.—THE DUKE SENDS AMBASSADORS TO THE KING OF PORTUGAL TO ARRANGE AN INTERVIEW BETWEEN THEM.

SHORTLY after the marshal's return from Rouelles, he aſſembled a body of about three hundred ſpears and ſix hundred archers, and, thus accompanied, advanced into Galicia a long day's journey from Sant Jago, and came before a town called Villeclope, which was only defended by the common people of the place. The marshal not only examined it himſelf but made his companions do ſo, and then aſked if they thought it might be taken by ſtorm. After ſome

ſome conſideration, they ſaid, that it could: Upon this they all diſmounted, and gave their horſes to the ſervants to be led to the rear.

They divided themſelves into three diviſions, and gave their orders like able men at arms. Sir Thomas Moreaux had the firſt: he gave the ſecond to ſir Evan Fitzwarren, and the third to ſir John d'Ambreticourt. Each had under his command eighty ſpears, and ſeven ſcore archers, which was thought ſufficient for the attack of ſuch a place.

They approached the town, and gallantly entered the ditch, for it was dry, and aſcended to the walls well ſhielded: the archers were poſted on the banks of the ditch, and ſhot ſo ably that ſcarcely any dared ſhew themſelves in its defence. Notwithſtanding this, the townſmen fought valiantly, and they were very numerous: ſome lanced darts, others ſtones, and uſed long poles ſhod with iron, which gave ſuch blows that on whomſoever they fell, unleſs well armed, he was ſeverely wounded or ſlain.

The knights and ſquires, eager for renown, were buſily employed in battering the wall with the pick-axes and other things which they had brought with them, and continued their work in ſpite of all the things thrown down on them. Many gallant deeds were done; and in particular from two ſquires from Hainault, Thierry and William de Soumain. They, with their aſſiſtants, made a breach in the wall, and fought hand to hand with thoſe within. Theſe two brothers gained ſeven lances, which were puſh-

ed

ed at them through the breach, by wreſting them out of the enemies hands. They were under the pennon of ſir Evan Fitzwarren.

Sir John d'Ambreticourt made no boy's play, but ſhewed himſelf a true knight: he poſted himſelf at the foot of the walls, and his pennon, with his arms of two hamets gules on a field ermine, fixed in the ground before him: he had a pick-axe in his hand, labouring with all his might to batter the wall. One may be ſurpriſed the townſmen were not frightened when they ſaw themſelves thus attacked on all ſides; but it laſted not long, for there were too many able men employed, and, perceiving what muſt happen, they reſolved to ſurrender.

The bailiff of the town, through whoſe means the place had held out for the king, came forth, and, having demanded who was the commander, ſaid,—'My lord, order a ceſſation of arms, for the inhabitants wiſh to enter into a treaty with you.' The marſhal replied, he would cheerfully do ſo, and ſent a herald round the ditches, who thus ſpoke to the Engliſh,—'Ceaſe aſſaulting until you ſhall hear the trumpet of the marſhal, for there is a treaty going forward with the townſmen.' On this ſpeech of the herald, the attack was ſuſpended, and the aſſailants repoſed themſelves: indeed, many had need of it, for they had laboured hard and were much fatigued.

The townſmen, by their bailiff, ſaid they were willing to yield the town on having their lives and fortunes ſpared, as the other towns in Galicia had done. 'Indeed!' ſaid the marſhal,

'but

'but you will not come off ſo cheaply, for you have given us much trouble, and wounded our men. You ſee plainly you cannot hold out longer, and you muſt purchaſe your peace from us, or we return to the attack and take your town by ſtorm.' 'And what is the ſum you expect for our ranſom?' 'In God's name,' ſaid the marſhal, 'ten thouſand francs.' 'You aſk too much,' replied the bailiff: 'I offer you two thouſand, for the town is poor, and has been heavily taxed.' 'I will not accept your offer,' ſaid the marſhal; 'but take time to conſider of it, and do not let the place be loſt for three or four thouſand francs, for all muſt be ours. I am already blamed by my companions for having entered into any treaty with you: therefore make haſte, and either pay a handſome ranſom or take the conſequences.'

The bailiff returned to the town, and, calling the inhabitants together, ſaid, 'What will you do? If you ſuffer the Engliſh to renew the attack, they will ſtorm the town, put us all to death, and plunder our wealth. They demand ten thouſand francs, and I have offered two, which I know is too little, and they will never take them: we muſt increaſe our offer two or three thouſand more.

Some who were much alarmed for their lives and fortunes ſaid,—'Bailiff, do not fail making a bargain with them; for, ſooner than they ſhall renew the aſſault, we will give four thouſand francs.' 'It is well ſaid,' anſwered the bailiff, 'and I will again treat with them.'

On

On this, the bailiff came again to the marſhal, who was waiting for him; and a ranſom was agreed on which, if I recollect, was ſix thouſand francs. The gates were thrown open to the army, who quartered themſelves in the town and refreſhed themſelves there two days.

The marſhal gave the place as a garriſon to ſir Evan Fitzwarren, who had under him two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers; he held the place upwards of eight months: but the ranſom-money went to the duke of Lancaſter, the marſhal retaining one thouſand francs.

After this ſurrender of Villeclope, the marſhal returned to Sant Jago, which was his head-quarters, for the duke was deſirous of having him near his perſon. At times, he marched to the borders of Caſtille, to alarm the French; but in general the Engliſh did not quit Galicia, whither the king of Caſtille ſent none to oppoſe them; for he was adviſed not to attack them with a large army, but to harraſs them from his garriſons, and to wait for ſuccours from France.

The duke's counſellors ſaid to him as follows: 'My lord, it is neceſſary that you and the king of Portugal ſhould have an interview to conſer together. You write to each other, but that is not enough; for the French are a ſubtle race, and ſee farther into affairs than moſt other nations. Should they, underhand, make a peace between the king of Portugal and the king of Caſtille, who has at his court, as we have been informed, ſeveral of the great barons of Portugal, either by a marriage or otherwiſe, ſo as to prevent

prevent you from having any aſſiſtance from him, what would become of you? You would be in a much worſe condition than ever in this country, and the Caſtillians would not care any thing for us, for you know they are the falſeſt and moſt gloomy people in the world. Do you imagine the king of Portugal has not thoroughly examined every thing that concerns him? and if the king of Caſtille would agree to a peace, allowing him for his life to reign in Portugal, and himſelf to be unmoleſted in Caſtille, we doubt not but he would turn his back on you, notwithſtanding he has been ſo preſſing to bring you hither. Thus will you be completely ruined. You are well acquainted with the preſent ſtate of England, that it has enough to do to make head againſt its old enemies the French and Scots. Make the moſt, therefore, of the men you now have, and puſh on the war vigorouſly; for, if you expect any reinforcements from England, you will be diſappointed. You were two years in obtaining what you now have, and the king, your nephew, does not feel for the intereſts which made you quit the country. He is young, and confides in young counſellors, which has thrown England into much peril. Have an interview, therefore, with the king of Portugal as ſpeedily as may be, and talk to him yourſelf; for you will gain more in one converſation than by four months writing.'

The duke of Lancaſter treaſured up theſe words; for he knew they were the truth, and that they had loyally adviſed him. He anſwered

ed, 'What would you have me do?' We wiſh you would ſend five or ſix of your knights to the king of Portugal, and we adviſe that a baron, at leaſt, be of the number, to remonſtrate with him on public affairs; and let it be ſuggeſted that you are very anxious to have ſome perſonal conferences with him. Thoſe whom you ſend will, of courſe, act with prudence; but, by all means, let them preſs for an immediate interview.' The duke conſented to this propoſal; and the lord Poinings, a great baron in England, ſir John Bancel*, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, and ſir John Sounder, baſtard-brother to the conſtable of the army, were ordered to go to Portugal.

Theſe lords made themſelves ready, to ſet out from Sant Jago with one hundred ſpears and two hundred archers; but juſt as they were on the point of departure, having received their credential letters, there arrived from Portugal a knight and ſquire, attended by twelve lances. The knight's name was Vaſco Martin d'Acunha, and the ſquire Fernando Martin de Merlo: they were both of the king's houſehold, and the neareſt about his perſon. They were comfortably lodged in Sant Jago, and preſented to the duke and ducheſs, by each of whom they were moſt graciouſly received. They delivered their letters to their graces, which being read, they found, that in addition to the ſtrong expreſſions of friendſhip and affection, the king of Portugal had ſent two handſome ambling white mules, which gave them much pleaſure. The Engliſh

* Q. if not lord Burnel.

embaſſy

embaſſy was not for this laid aſide; it was only retarded four days. On the fifth day they ſet out, accompanied by the Portugueſe; and the duke, as a token of friendſhip, ſent the king of Portugal two ſuch beautiful pilgrim-falcons as had never been ſeen, and ſix Engliſh greyhounds, excellently trained for hunting all ſorts of beaſts.

The Engliſh and Portugueſe continued their journey through Galicia, without fear of the Caſtillians, for they were at too great a diſtance. On the road ſir John d'Ambreticourt and Ferdinand de Merlo commenced an acquaintance; for the ſquire had, in former times, ſerved with ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt, ſir John's uncle, and had even been with him when he died in Carentan. They continued in converſation until they arrived at the gate of Coimbra, where the king of Portugal reſided.

As they were riding gently together, behind the reſt of their company, they met a herald and his ſervant from Coimbra, on the road to the duke and his lords at Sant Jago. He was attached to the king of Portugal, who, at the time of his coronation, had given him the name of Coimbra. The herald had already converſed with the lords who were advanced; and when don Ferdinand ſaw him, he ſaid; 'Here comes the king's herald, who has not been long in this country: I will inquire ſome news from him.' When they met, the ſquire ſaid,—'Where have you been for this year past, that I have not ſeen you?' 'In God's name,' replied the herald, 'I have been in England to the king and his uncles, who have made me very rich. I

went

went thence by ſea to Brittany, and was preſent at the marriage of the duke, and at the grand feasts he gave two months in the town of Nantes, on his union with the lady Jane of Navarre*. From thence I returned to Guerrande, and by ſea to Portugal.'

While he was thus ſpeaking, the ſquire kept his eyes fixed on an enamelled ſcutcheon that hung on the herald's breaſt, on which were emblazoned the arms of the king of Portugal and other knights. Pointing with his finger to a coat of arms, he ſaid,—'Ah, here are the arms of a gallant knight of Portugal, ſir John Portelet, which I am happy to ſee; for he is a valiant knight, and was once of great ſervice to me, which I ought always to remember.' When, taking out of his purſe four florins, he gave them to the herald, who returned him thanks. Sir John d'Ambreticourt examined the ſcutcheon, and remembering the arms, told me ſome time afterward, that the arms were two chaudieres ſables on a field argent, with an endenture gules.

When the herald had taken his leave and departed, the ſquire thus ſpoke: 'Sir John, you noticed thoſe ſable chaudieres, which the knight, to whom I am ſo much indebted, bore in his arms.' 'Yes, I did,' replied Sir John: 'but tell me the cauſe why you praiſe him ſo much: I ſhall willingly listen to you; for, as we ride

* On the deceaſe of the duke of Brittany, ſhe was queen of England, by her marriage with Henry IV.

on,

on, we ſhall be at a loſs for converſation.' 'That I will do,' replied he; 'for ſuch a knight is worth talking of.'

'A little before the battle of Aljubarota, as the king of Portugal was marching through the country from Coimbra, he ſent me to ſeek ſome of his knights, that they might be preſent at the engagement. I therefore rode off, attended only by a ſingle page. In my way, I fell in with twenty Gaſcon lances, and I was ſuddenly in the midſt before I perceived them; when I was made priſoner, and aſked whither I was going. I ſaid, 'To the caſtle du Ront*.' 'What to do there?' 'To ſeek ſir John Fernando Portelet; for the king wiſhes for his company at Aljubarota.' What! is not don Fernando, governor of Ront, with your king of Portugal?' 'No,' I replied, 'he is not; but he will haſten thither the moment he hears my meſſage.' 'In God's name,' ſaid they, 'he ſhall hear it; for we will ride thither.' On ſaying this, they turned about, and took the road to Ront. When they were within ſight, the watch on the battlements ſounded his horn, as a ſignal for the appearance of an enemy.

'Don Fernando aſked, from what quarter they were coming? 'From the ſide of Oporto,' replied the watch. 'Ah, ah,' ſaid he, 'they muſt be Caſtillians ſeeking adventures, and on their road to Santaren. I will go and look at them; for they may poſſibly tell me ſome news, and where the king is.' Having ordered his horſe to

* Caſtle du Ront. Q. if not Ourem.

be

be ſaddled, and his pennon to be unfurled, he ſet off on a gallop, with only nineteen more, to meet the enemy, who had formed an ambuſcade.

'The Caſtillian party had ſent one of their men to ſcour over the plain, mounted on a genet, which being perceived by don Fernando, he ſaid to a ſquire, 'Gallop thy genet, and ſee who that fellow is prancing on the plain.' The ſquire, ſticking ſpurs into his horſe, ſoon came up with the horſeman, who ſuffered himſelf nearly to be overtaken; for his orders were to return inſtantly to the ambuſcade, if followed by any one. When they were hard by, the whole party ſallied forth and purſued the ſquire, who, being well mounted, had turned back. In the chaſe, they ſhouted 'Caſtille!' which convinced don Fernando, who had halted under his pennon, to wait for his ſquire, whom they were cloſely purſuing, that they were enemies; and he ſaid,—'I am now ſure they muſt be Caſtillians: let us ſhout 'Portugal!' for I am reſolved to meet them.'

'At theſe words he graſped his ſpear, and came on full ſpeed up to them. The firſt whom he met he ſtruck to the ground, and the ſecond ſhared the ſame fate. Of the twenty-five ſpears, ten were already lying on the ground: the remainder took to flight; and of them ſeveral were likewiſe ſlain or wounded. All this I witneſſed with great pleaſure: for I ſaw in it my deliverance, and, in a few minutes, was left alone. I then advanced towards don Fernando,

who, on ſeeing me, recollected me; for I had been formerly acquainted with him, and aſked from whence I came, and what I was doing there: I then related to him my adventure, and how the Spaniards had taken me. 'And where is the king? Do you know nothing about him?' 'On my troth, ſir, to-morrow he will give battle to the king of Caſtille; and I was ſent to tell this to ſuch knights as were ignorant of it.' 'To-morrow!' ſaid don Fernando. 'Yes, on my faith; and, if you doubt me, aſk theſe Caſtillians whom you have taken.

'He went to his priſoners, and inquired from them if there were certainly to be a battle on the morrow. They ſaid, that in truth there would be a general engagement on the morrow between Caſtille and Portugal, and that each ſide was making every exertion. The knight was well pleaſed at this intelligence, inſomuch that he ſaid to them, 'For the good news you have told me, I give you all your liberties, but ſurrender to me my countryman.' Thus did I regain my freedom; and, don Fernando having taken leave of thoſe who captured me, they went their way. We returned to Ourem, where the knight made himſelf ready, and ſet off together about midnight. The diſtance from Ourem to Aljubarota may be about ſix leagues: but, to avoid the Caſtillians and their parties, we lengthened our road. We heard, long before we ſaw the armies drawn up, that there was to be a battle; and, when we approached, we ſaw the king of Portugal in array and the king

of

of Caſtille oppoſite to him. At firſt, the knight could not diſtinguiſh the Portugueſe from the Caſtillians, but ſaid, 'I ſhould imagine the largeſt army muſt be that of Caſtille. We rode ſo near that we plainly diſtinguiſhed the enemy drawn up in battle array: ſome put themſelves in motion, in purſuit of us: but I fancy they were foreigners, from Gaſcony. Don Fernando, obſerving them, ſaid, 'Here are our enemies: let us haſten away.' The enemy advanced full gallop, ſhouting, 'Caſtille, Caſtille!' but our men, ſeeing our ſituation, came to our aſſiſtance: the main body, however, did not take any ſtep in conſequence.

'The king received don Fernando with great joy, and he was poſted at the bridle of the king's horſe, for he was one of our braveſt knights. I feel myſelf under the greateſt obligation to him for having delivered me from the hands of mine enemies; otherwiſe I ſhould not have been preſent at this famous battle of Aljubarota. Now, did he not do me a great ſervice?' 'On my faith, that he did,' replied ſir John; 'and, from what you have ſaid, he muſt be well acquainted with his buſineſs.' 'Aye, that he is,' anſwered the ſquire. Upon this, they rode on a little faſter to overtake their companions; and they all arrived that night at Coimbra.

CHAP. XI.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER HAS AN INTERVIEW WITH THE KING OF PORTUGAL.---A MARRIAGE IS AGREED UPON BETWEEN THE KING AND THE LADY PHILIPPA, DAUGHTER OF THE DUKE.

THE king of Portugal was well pleaſed at the arrival of the English knights, and commanded that they ſhould be comfortably lodged. When they were ready, don Martin d'Acunha and don Fernando Martin de Merlo, who were acquainted with the king's habits, introduced them to him. He received them very graciouſly; and after ſome converſation, which they knew well how to keep up, they preſented the falcons and greyhounds. The king cheerfully accepted them, as he was fond of the chaſe. They returned the king thanks, on the part of the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, for the handſome mules he had given them. The king replied, theſe were trifles, merely tokens of affection, ſuch as lords deſirous of maintaining love and friendſhip ought to make each other; but he ſhould ſoon offer more ſplendid preſents. Wine and ſpices were now brought, of which the Engliſh knights having partaken, they took leave of the king and returned to their lodgings, where they ſupped. On the morrow, they dined at the palace, and the lord Poinings and ſir John Bancel were ſeated at the king's table.

table. Sir John d'Ambreticourt and ſir John Sounder were at another table with the great barons of the kingdom, among whom was Lawrence Fongaſſe, ſquire of honour to the king, who was well known to theſe knights, having been acquainted with them in England; on which account he made them the beſt cheer in his power, and this he knew well how to do.

The dinner the king of Portugal gave to theſe knights was very handſome and well ſerved: when over, they adjourned to the council chamber, and the knights, addreſſing themſelves to the king, the count d'Acunha and the count de Novaire, ſpoke as follows: 'Sire, with all the compliments the duke of Lancaſter has charged us to pay you, he ordered us to ſay, that he is very deſirous of having a perſonal interview with you.' The king replied, he was equally anxious for it, and added, 'I beg of you to haſten every thing as much as poſſible, that we may have a conference together.' 'That will be very proper,' ſaid the barons of Portugal, 'for until you meet you will never underſtand each other. You may then confer on the moſt effectual means of carrying on the war againſt the king of Caſtille.' 'That is true,' anſwered the knights. 'Be ſpeedy about it, then,' ſaid the king: 'for, if the duke wiſhes to ſee me, I want alſo to ſee him.' They then entered on other converſation; for the council was to determine when and where this meeting ſhould take place, and inform the English knights of it. This was done. It was agreed

the

the king of Portugal should go to Oporto, and the duke of Lancaster advance along the borders of Galicia; and ſomewhere between them and Oporto the meeting was to be held.

When the English knights had remained three days at Coimbra, they departed and followed the ſame road back to Sant Jago, where they related to the duke and ducheſs all that had paſſed. They were, with reaſon, well ſatisfied with it, for their affairs ſeemed now likely to be attended to.

When the day of meeting approached, the duke of Lancaster left his army, under the command of his marshal, at Sant Jago, and, attended by three hundred ſpears and ſix hundred archers, and ſir John Holland (who had married his eldeſt daughter), with many knights, rode towards the frontiers of Portugal.

The king of Portugal, hearing that the duke was ſet out from Sant Jago, left Oporto with ſix hundred ſpears, and went to a town called in that country Mouſon *, the last town of Portugal on that ſide. The duke came to a town on the frontiers called Magaſſe †. Between Mouſon and Magaſſe runs a ſmall river through meadows and fields, over which is a bridge called Pont de More ‡.

On a Thurſday morning, the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaster had their first interview at this bridge, attended by their eſcorts, when they made acquaintance with each

* Mouſon. Q. † Magaſſe. Q. ‡ Pont de More. Q.

other.

other. On the king of Portugal's ſide had been built a bower, covered with leaves, in which the duke was entertained at dinner by the king. It was a handſome one; and the biſhop of Coimbra, the biſhop of Oporto, as alſo the archbiſhop of Braganza, were ſeated at the king's table with the duke, and a little below him were ſir John Holland and ſir Henry Beaumont. There were many minſtrels, and this entertainment laſted until night.

The king of Portugal was that day clothed in white lined with crimſon, with a red croſs of St. George, being the dreſs of the order of Avis, of which he was grandmaſter*. When the people had elected him their king, he declared he would always wear that dreſs in honour of God and St. George, and his attendants were all dreſſed in white and crimſon. When it became late, they took leave of each other, with the engagement of meeting again on the morrow. The king went to Mouſon, and the duke to Magaſſe, which places were only ſeparated by the river and meadows. On the Friday, after hearing maſs, they mounted their horſes, and rode over the Pont de More, to the ſpot where they had met the preceding day. The houſe which had been erected for this occaſion was the faireſt and greateſt that had been ever ſeen there. The king and duke had each their apartments hung with cloth and covered with

* Froiſſart miſtakes the colour of the croſs: it was green, and borne on the left ſide.

carpets

carpets as convenient as if the king had been at Liſbon or the duke in London.

Before dinner, they had a conference on the ſtate of their affairs, how they should carry on the war, and when they should commence it. They reſolved to order their marshals to continue their attacks during the winter, which the king was to paſs in Portugal, and the duke at Sant Jago; and it was ſettled that, early in March, they would unite their forces, and march to combat the king of Caſtille wherever he might be, and whoever he might have with him; for the Engliſh and Portugueſe, when united, would be full thirty thouſand men.

When this had been determined, the king's council introduced the ſubject of a marriage with their king; for the country was very deſirous he would marry, as it was now time, and by it they would be much ſtrengthened; and they thought he could not make a better choice for himſelf, nor one more agreeable to them, than by intermarrying with the houſe of Lancaſter. The duke, who ſaw the attachment the king and the Portugueſe had for him, and that he had need of their aſſiſtance, as he was come from England to Portugal to regain his kingdom of Castille, replied with a ſmile, addreſſing the king; 'Sir king, I have at Sant Jago two girls, and I will give you the choice to take which of them ſhall pleaſe you beſt. Send thither your council, and I will return her with them.' 'Many thanks,' ſaid the king: 'you offer me more than I aſk. I will leave my couſin, Catharine,

tharine, of Caſtille; but I demand your daughter Philippa, in marriage, whom I will eſpouſe and make my queen.'

At theſe words, the conference broke up, as it was dinner-time. They were ſeated as on the preceding day, and moſt ſumptuouſly and plentifully ſerved, accordingly to the cuſtom of that country. After dinner, the king and duke returned to their lodgings.

On the Saturday after maſs, they again mounted their horſes, and returned to Pont de More in grand array. The duke this day entertained at dinner the king and his attendants. His apartments were decorated with the richeſt tapeſtry, with his arms emblazoned on it, and as ſplendidly ornamented as if he had been at Hertford, Leiceſter, or at any of his manſions in England, which very much aſtoniſhed the Portugueſe. Three biſhops and one archbiſhop were ſeated at the upper table; the biſhops of Liſbon, of Oporto, of Coimbra, and archbishop of Braganza. The king of Portugal was placed at the middle, and the duke ſomewhat below him: a little lower than the duke, the count d'Acunha and the count de Novaire. At the head of the ſecond table was the deputy grandmaſter of Avis: then the grandmaſter of St. James, in Portugal, and the grandmaſter of St. John, don Gallopes Portelet, don Fernando his ſon, ſir Alvarez d'Acunha, Vaſco Martin d'Acunha, the Podich de Senede, Vaſco Martin de Merlo, all great barons. The abbot of Aljubarota, the abbot of Saint Mary, in Eſtremadoura, ſir Alvarez Pereira, marſhal of Portugal,

tugal, John Radighos Pereira, John James de Sylva, John Radighos de Sar, and many other Portugueſe knights were there ſeated; for not one Engliſhman was at the table that day, but ſerved their guests. There were numbers of minſtrels, who played their parts well; and the duke gave them and the heralds one hundred nobles each.

When this feſtival was ended, they took a moſt friendly leave of each other, until they ſhould meet again. The king returned to Oporto, and the duke to Magaſſe, from whence he journeyed towards St. Jago. The count de Novaire eſcorted him with one hundred Portugueſe lances, until he was out of all danger, when he took leave and returned to Portugal.

The ducheſs was very impatient for the duke's return, to hear how the conferences had paſſed; of courſe, you may ſuppoſe, ſhe received him with joy. She asked what he thought of the king of Portugal. 'On my faith,' replied the duke, 'he is an agreeable man, and has the appearance of being a valiant one, and I think he will reign powerfully; for he is much beloved by his ſubjects, who ſay they have not been ſo fortunate in a king for theſe hundred years. He is but twenty-ſix years old, and, like the Portugueſe, ſtrong, and well formed in his limbs and body to go through much labour and pain.' 'Well, and what was done in regard to the marriage?' ſaid the ducheſs. 'I have given him one of my daughters.' 'Which?' asked the ducheſs. 'I offered him the choice of Catharine or Philippa; for which he thanked me much,

much, and has fixed on Philippa.' 'He is in the right,' said the duchess; 'for my daughter Catharine is too young for him.'

The duke and duchess passed the time as well as they could: winter was approaching, though in Galicia the severity of that season is scarcely felt; for it is always there so warm, that some fruits are eatable even in March, and beans, pease and grass, are high and flourishing in February. Their hay-harvest is over before mid-summer-day; and, by that time, their corn is, in several places, completely ripe.

CHAP. XII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER'S MARSHAL GAINS FOR HIM SEVERAL PLACES IN GALICIA.—THE CONDUCT OF THE KING OF CASTILLE.

NOTWITHSTANDING the duke of Lancaster lived quietly at Sant Jago with his duchess and children, it was not so with his army; for the commanders made frequent excursions over the country, conquering towns and castles, of which, for a time, they held possession. I will faithfully narrate the manner in which they did this, and the names of the towns they gained; for I was told all the particulars of the campaign by those English knights who had been actors in these conquests; but more particularly by that gallant knight of Portugal whom I have before mentioned, who, in the most friendly manner, entered into all the details

details at Middleburgh, in Zealand, where he was, on his way to Pruſſia. I have already told his name, but I will repeat it: he was called John Fernando Portelet, who informed me as follows:—

'When the duke of Lancaster was returned to Sant Jago, from the frontiers of Portugal, ſir Thomas Moreaux, the marſhal of his army, ſaid to him, that he was unwilling to remain in idleneſs; and that, ſince they were in an enemy's country, he would make ſome excurſions to conquer towns or castles, and employ the army, who were very anxious for it.

'He gave his orders accordingly, and declared he would penetrate into Galicia farther than he had hitherto been, and would not leave town nor castle behind him, without their ſubmitting to the duke. He began his march from Sant Jago, with ſix hundred lances and twelve hundred archers, and took the road to Pontevedra, a good town of Galicia, which held out for the king of Castille.

'The townſmen were well aware of the intended attack; for all the inhabitants of the flat countries fled before the English, to different towns, to ſave themſelves and fortunes. When the marſhal came before the place, the inhabitants were in deep conſultation, whether to ſurrender or to defend themſelves, but they were not unanimous. The lower ſorts of inhabitants wanted to ſurrender instantly: the bailiff, (who had been ordered thither by the king to guard and defend it) with thoſe who were the richest, wished to hold out; for they ſaid, that an inſtant

stant surrender would not redound to their honour nor profit. They were still in debate, when the watch sounded his horn, to announce the arrival of the English. This broke up the assembly; and every one ran to the battlements, armed with stones, darts, javelins, with a full determination to defend the place, and not to surrender it until pushed to extremities.

'When the marshal and his companions arrived at Pontevedra, they dismounted and gave their horses to their servants. They drew up their men for instantly attacking it. The archers were ranged around the walls with bows bent for shooting; and men at arms, well armed and shielded, descended into the ditch. On the marshal's trumpet sounding, the assault commenced; and those who were in the ditch scrambled up to the walls, with pick-axes and iron crows to batter them.

'The townsmen showered down on them stones and flints, to their great annoyance: they would have done more, if the archers had not made such good use of their bows: few, after some time, dared to shew themselves on the bulwarks, for they killed and wounded many. The bailiff of the town was so severely struck by an arrow, which pierced his helmet and head, that he was forced to be carried to his house. The ill-intentioned, in the place, were not sorry at this, because he would not consent to a surrender. This accident, however, did not cause the defence to be weakened; on the contrary, they were the more active; and the attack continued until night, when the enemy

ſounded a retreat. Many were wounded on each ſide. The English returned to their quarters, fully determined to renew the attack on the morrow, and to gain the place by capitulation or storm.

'During the night, the inhabitants held a meeting, and ſaid; 'We are mad, thus to ſuffer ourſelves to be killed and wounded for nothing. Why do not we act like the other towns, which have ſurrendered? They have yielded themſelves up to the duke of Lancaſter and the lady Conſtance, daughter to king don Pedro; on condition that, if the rest of the towns in Spain acknowledge him for king, they will do the ſame: in which they have acted wiſely, for they have remained unmolested.' 'In God's name,' ſaid others, 'we wanted to do ſo, but our bailiff perſuaded us to the contrary, for which he has paid ſeverely; for there is a great chance if he will ever recover from the wound in his head.' 'Let us go,' ſaid ſome, 'and ſpeak with him, and ask how we had beſt act now; for the Engliſh will certainly return to-morrow, and conquer us by fair or foul means.' This propoſition was adopted, and twelve of the principal townſmen went to the bailiff's houſe, whoſe name was, I believe, Dyontable du Lyon. They found him lying on a couch, his wound having been just dreſſed; and, as it had ſo lately happened, he did not ſuffer much from it, and made good cheer to thoſe among them whom he knew, and had come to ſee him. He inquired how the attack had been carried on, and if they had well defended themſelves.

'They

'They ſaid,—'Tolerably well; and, thanks to God, no one, excepting himſelf, of any conſequence, had been hurt; but to-morrow will be the day, for we are aſſured we ſhall be very hard puſhed; and ſuch ignorant and ſimple perſons as ourſelves will never be able to withſtand their attacks. We therefore come to you for advice how to act. The Engliſh menace us greatly; and, ſhould they win the place by ſtorm, they will put all to the ſword, and plunder the town.'

'In the name of God,' replied Dyontable du Lyon, 'you can never be blamed for ſurrendering; but treat prudently, and manage by all means to avoid being taken by ſtorm. Offer to put yourſelves under the obedience of the duke and duchefs of Lancaſter on the ſame terms with thoſe of Corunna, for no Engliſhman ever entered that town. They ſent out to them proviſions for money; and, if you will follow my advice, you will do the ſame. I believe they will be glad to accept your ſubmiſſion, for there are many other towns in Galicia to conquer, and they will not hold out for trifles.' 'You ſay well,' replied the townſmen, 'and we will do as you adviſe.' They then left him, and paſſed the night as well as they could. By ſun-riſe, on the morrow, they had properly inſtructed ſeven of the principal inhabitants, whom they ſent out of the town to treat with ſir Thomas Moreaux: they met him on his march to renew the attack.

'They caſt themſelves on their knees, and, having ſaluted him, ſaid,—'My lord, we are

ſent

ſent hither by the inhabitants of Pontevedra, who offer to place themſelves under the obedience of the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, on the ſame terms which thoſe of Corunna have obtained. This they have ordered us to tell you, and alſo that you may have proviſion in plenty on paying a fair price. It is the wiſh of thoſe who have ſent us, that you puſh them no farther, and that neither yourſelf nor any from you enter the place armed and by force; but that if you or any others be deſirous of courteouſly entering the town, they ſhall be welcome.'

'The marſhal had with him one who underſtood perfectly the Galician tongue, who repeated to him in Engliſh all that had been ſaid. The marſhal replied,—'Return quickly to your town, and let thoſe who have ſent you come to the barriers. I will grant them a reſpite until to-morrow at ſun-riſe, ſhould we not make a ſatisfactory agreement.' They promiſed to comply with this command, and departed. When arrived at the barriers, they found there the greater part of the townſmen waiting, to whom they told all that had paſſed between them and the marſhal, adding, 'The marſhal will ſoon be here himſelf: therefore, if you do not think yourſelves of ſufficient conſequence to parley with him, haſten thoſe hither whom you may wiſh for.'

'As the principal inhabitants were at the barriers, they ſaw ſir Thomas Moreaux, with about forty lances, advancing, who on his arrival diſmounted and his companions likewiſe. He addreſſed them as follows: 'You, the inhabitants of

Pontevedra,

Pontevedra, have ſent to us ſeven of your brother townſmen, and perſons in whom I am ſatisfied you have confidence: they have told us that you are willing to ſubmit yourſelves to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, on the ſame terms which thoſe of Corunna have obtained, but that you wiſh to have no other governors but yourſelves. Now tell me, I beg of you, what ſovereignty my lord would have if he had not his own officers in the town? When you pleaſed you would acknowledge him for your king, and when you pleaſed diſavow him. Know, that it is my intention, as well as that of thoſe around me, to give you a wiſe, valiant and prudent governor, who will defend you and do ample juſtice to all alike, and I mean to thruſt out the officers of the king of Caſtille: let me hear, therefore, if you conſent to theſe terms, for ſuch are our fixed reſolutions.'

'They requested leave to conſult together, and having done ſo, replied; 'My lord, we have the fullest confidence in you, but we are afraid of pillagers; for we have formerly been ſo ill treated by perſons of that deſcription, when ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin and the Bretons firſt came hither: they left us not a rag, and we are in dread of the like happening again.'

'You need not,' ſaid sir Thomas, 'for no pillager ſhall ever enter your town. You ſhall loſe nothing by us: all we want is your obedience.' This ſpeech ſettled the buſineſs, and sir Thomas and his company entered the town, his army taking up their quarters in tents and huts without

the walls. The inhabitants ſent them twenty-four horſe loads of wine, as much bread, and poultry in abundance for the principal officers.

'The marshal remained the whole day in Pontevedra, to arrange a government for the duke of Lancaster. He appointed an honest Galician governor, who had followed the ducheſs to England, with whom the inhabitants were ſatisfied. On the morrow, he returned to his army, and in a council determined to march againſt another town that was rebellious, called Dighos,* six leagues distant from Pontevedra. They instantly began their march; and, when within two leagues of the place, they ſent forward to know if they would ſurrender, as Pontevedra and other towns had done, which if they refuſed, they might rest aſſured they should be attacked in the morning.

'The inhabitants paid no attention to this menace, and ſaid, that they had often had aſſaults, but had never been the worſe for them. When this anſwer was carried to the marshal, he ſwore 'by St. George they should be attacked in earnest. What! are the ſcoundrels ſo proud to ſend me ſuch an anſwer?' They passed the night comfortably with what they had brought with them, and on the morrow by ſun-riſe were on their march to Dighos. It was near ten o'clock when they came before the town, and each party made preparations for the attack and defence. Dighos, though not a large town, is ſufficiently strong; and had there

* Dighos Q. if not Vigo.

been

been within it ſome knights and ſquires, who underſtood their profeſſion, I do not believe the English would have gained it ſo easily as they did; for the moment the inhabitants felt the arrows of the English and ſaw many killed and wounded by them, for they were badly armed, they were panic-struck, and ſaid,—'Why do we let ourſelves be killed and wounded for the king of Caſtille? We may as well have the duke of Lancaſter, who married the daughter of don Pedro, for our king, as the ſon of don Henry of Transtamare. We must know, that if we be taken by ſtorm, our lives will be forfeited and our town plundered, and there does not ſeem ſuccour coming to us from any quarter. A month ago, we ſent a remonſtrance to the king of Caſtille at Burgos on our ſituation, and the peril we should be in, if the English marched hither, as we heard they intended doing. The king indeed ſpoke to the French knights who are with him on the matter, but no orders were given for any men at arms to be ſent hither as a garriſon, any more than to other parts of Galicia, which plainly shewed it was indifferent to the king whether we were won or not. He told our envoys to return and do as well as they could. This proves he does not wish us to be ſlain, nor the place taken by ſtorm.'

'On ſaying this, ſome of the townſmen mounted over the gateway, and from a window made ſigns they wished for a parley, to treat of peace. They were obſerved; and the marſhal, going thither, aſked what they wanted. They ſaid; 'Mar-

ſhal, order your men to retire; we will ſubmit ourſelves to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, on the ſame terms as thoſe of Corunna and other towns have obtained; and if you want proviſions, you ſhall courteously have them from us; but we will not ſuffer any one to enter the town by force of arms. This is our propoſal, and by this we mean to abide.' The marſhal was adviſed to anſwer,—'I agree to your terms; but I muſt appoint an able governor, to counſel and defend you, ſhould there be any need of it.' They anſwered, they would alſo admit of this.

'Thus was the treaty concluded; and, on the aſſault ceaſing, the army retreated from before it into the plain. The marſhal, ſir Evan Fitz-warren, ſir John Abuurelle,* the lord de Pommiers and ſir John d'Ambreticourt entered the town to refreſh themſelves, where they remained the whole day. Those without the walls received bread, wine and other proviſion from the town in abundance.

'After the conqueſt of Dighos, where the lords had availed themſelves of the opportunity to refreſh themſelves at their eaſe, for it is ſituated in a rich country, and had nominated as governor an Engliſh ſquire called Thomas Albery, a prudent and valiant man, to whom they gave twelve archers for his defence, they marched from thence ſkirting the mountains and borders of Caſtille, towards the large town of Bayona. When they

* I imagine this must be intended for ſir Hugh lord Burnel. See Dugdale.

had

had advanced within two leagues of the place, they halted and took up their quarters for the night. On the morrow, they dislodged and marched in battle-array to Bayona. When near, they formed themselves into two divisions, and sent forward a herald to learn the intentions of the inhabitants, whether they would surrender without being assaulted? The herald had not far to go; and, when arrived at the barriers, he found plenty of common people there, though badly armed, to whom he delivered his message; for he well understood their language, being a Portuguese. His name was Coimbra, and attached to the king of Portugal. 'You men of the town,' said he, 'what are your intentions? Will you suffer yourselves to be attacked, or will you surrender quietly to your sovereigns, the duke and duchess of Lancaster? My lord marshal and his companions send me hither to know what you mean to do.'

'Upon this, they collected together and began to talk aloud, saying,—'What shall we do? Shall we defend ourselves, or surrender?' An old man who had learnt experience, from having seen more than they had, addressed them,—'My good sirs, in our situation we must not hold long councils; and the English are very courteous in thus allowing us time to deliberate. You are aware that we have not any hopes of succour; for the king of Castille, who knows our situation well, and has done so since the arrival of the duke and duchess at Corunna, has not provided any resources for us, nor does he seem inclined so to do. If we therefore, allow ourselves to be attacked, the town

is

is ſo large and ill fortified, we cannot guard the whole; and the English are ſubtle in war: they will exert themſelves to conquer us, in hopes of plunder; for they are, like all men at arms, eager to enrich themſelves; and this town is ſuppoſed to be more rich than in fact it is. I therefore think it moſt adviſable that we quietly ſubmit to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, and, by not fooliſhly reſiſting, loſe more, but obtain peace on advantageous terms. This is the advice I give you.'

'They replied, they would follow it; and, as he was a man of conſideration in Bayona, they requested him to anſwer the herald. 'I will cheerfully do ſo; but we must give him ſome money, which will bind him to our interests, and induce him to make a favourable report to his lords.'

'On this he advanced to the herald, and ſaid; 'You will return to your lords, and aſſure them we are willing to put ourſelves under the obedience of the duke and ducheſs of Lancaster, in the ſame manner other towns in Galicia have done, or may do. Now, go and do our buſineſs well, and we will give you twenty florins.'

'The herald was delighted on hearing this ſpeech, and the promiſe of twenty florins; and ſaid, 'Where are the florins?' They were inſtantly paid down, and he ſet off, gaily, to rejoin the English army.

'The marshal and his companions, on ſeeing him return, aſked what news he had brought? 'Do the townſmen mean to ſurrender, or wait the attack?' 'By my faith, my lords,' replied the herald,

herald, 'they have no ſuch intentions. They deſire me to inform you, they are willing to ſubmit themſelves to the duke and ducheſs, on ſimilar terms to thoſe which other towns have obtained; and if you will go thither they will gladly receive you.' 'Well,' ſaid the marſhal, 'it is better we thus gain the place than by aſſault; for our men, at leaſt, will neither be wounded nor ſlain.' The marſhal and his army marched at a foot's pace to the town, where he diſmounted, and went to the barrier and gate. There were numbers of people aſſembled, but their whole armours were not worth ten francs, to ſee the Engliſh; and the perſon who had given the anſwer to the herald was there alſo, to conclude a treaty. The moment the herald perceived him, he ſaid to the marſhal,—'My lord, ſpeak to that elderly man who is bowing to you, for he has the greateſt weight in the place.'

'The marſhal advanced, and ſaid,—'Now, what have you to ſay? Will you ſurrender yourſelves to my lord, the duke of Lancaſter, and to his ducheſs, as to your legal ſovereigns?' 'Yes, my lord,' replied the old man: 'we ſurrender ourſelves to you, and acknowledge them for our lords, as other towns in Galicia have done; and, if you and your companions pleaſe to enter the town, you are welcome; but on condition, that ſhould you want proviſion, you do not ſeize it, but loyally pay for whatever you may take.'

'I agree to this,' ſaid the marſhal; 'for we only deſire the love and obedience of the country; but you muſt ſwear, that ſhould the king of

Caſtille

Caſtille come in perſon, or ſend hither any troops, you will defend yourſelves boldly againſt him and all his allies.' 'We willingly ſwear this; and ſhould he come himſelf, or ſend any troops, we will ſhut our gates againſt him or them, and inform you of it. Should you prove the ſtrongeſt, we will remain ſteady to your intereſt; for you will never find any deceit in us.'

'I am ſatisfied,' anſwered the marſhal, 'and do not require more. Before the expiration of the year, the diſpute will be decided; and the crown of Caſtille, Cordova, Galicia and Seville, will fall to the ſtrongeſt; for, by the end of Auguſt, there will be ſuch numbers of men at arms in Castille as have not been seen for theſe hundred years.' 'Well, my lord,' anſwered the elder, 'let happen what may, and the right fall where it ought, we of Galicia venture to wait the event.'

'Upon this, the holy ſacrament was brought; and thoſe who governed the town ſwore upon it to behave loyally and faithfully, like good ſubjects, to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, and to acknowledge them as their ſovereigns, in the ſame manner as other towns had done. The marshal, in the name of the duke of Lancaſter, received them as his ſubjects, and ſwore to defend and govern them in peace and juſtice. When all this had been done, the barriers and gates were thrown open, when all entered who choſe, and lodged themſelves where they could. They remained there four days, to recruit themſelves and horſes, and alſo to wait for fair weather; for, during

theſe

theſe four days, it rained inceſſantly, and the rivers were much ſwelled. There are, in Galicia, many rivers which are ſo greatly increaſed by the mountain-torrents, that they are very dangerous to paſs. While waiting for a change in the weather, they held a council, whether they ſhould march for Beſances* or Ribadane,† which is a ſtrong town, and inhabited by the moſt inſolent and treacherous people in all Galicia.

'On the fifth day, the English diſlodged from Bayona, and took the field. The weather was now temperate, and the rivers, to their great joy, reduced to their uſual ſize. They rode towards Ribadavia without any oppoſition; and, as no one came out againſt them, they thought themſelves lords of Galicia. They arrived near the town, with a large train of baggage, horſes and victuallers, and encamped in a grove of olive trees on a handſome plain, about half a league from the place. They reſolved to ſend a herald to parley with the townſmen, before they made any preparations for the attack; for the marshal well knew they were the falſeſt and worſt people in all Caſtille, extenſive as it is; and that they paid no regard to the king, nor to any one but themſelves, depending on the ſtrength of their town.

'The herald, before he ſet out, was charged to learn their intentions; but, when he came to the barriers he found them and the gate cloſed. He shouted and called, but received no anſwer

* Q Betanços. † Ribadane,—probably intended for Ribadavia.

whatever.

whatever. He ſaw indeed, ſeveral paſs backwards and forwards on the battlements; but for all he could do, not one would come and ſpeak with him, though he remained an hour thus bawling to them. Finding he could not obtain a hearing, he ſaid to himſelf,—'I fancy theſe men of Ribadavia have had ſome communication with thoſe of Bayona, who are vexed they ſhould have given me twenty florins for ſo little trouble, and want to make me here pay for it. By holy Mary! I believe they wish to keep me until it be late, and then ſeize and hang me.' On ſaying this, he remounted his horſe, and returned to the marshal and his army. On his arrival, he was aſked what news, and whether the inhabitants of Ribadavia would ſurrender as the other towns had done, or force them to the attack. 'By my troth,' replied the herald, 'I know not what they mean to do; for they are ſo proud, that though I bawled to them for an hour, they never deigned to give me any anſwer.' Sir John Burnel then ſaid, 'Haſt thou ſeen no one? Perhaps they are fled, and have left their town for fear of us.' 'Fled!' replied the herald: 'begging your pardon, my lord, they diſdain to do ſuch a thing as fly; and before you conquer them, they will give you more plague than all the other towns in Galicia together. Know that there are plenty of men within it; for I ſaw them when I called out, 'Liſten to me, liſten to me! I am a herald whom my lord marſhal has ſent hither to parley and treat with you;' but they gave me no anſwer, only ſtaring at me, and burſting out in laughter.'

Ah,

'Ah, the infolent ſcoundrels!' ſaid the marſhal: 'by St. George, they ſhall be well puniſhed for this; and, unleſs my lord of Lancaſter ſhall order otherwiſe, never will I quit this place until I have reduced it under his obedience. Let us now eat and drink to refreſh ourſelves, and then march to the aſſault; for I will ſee this town nearer, and what is its ſtrength, that makes the ſcoundrels thus infolent, and induces them to hold us ſo cheap.'

'When they had finiſhed their repaſt, they mounted their horſes, and, with trumpets ſounding, rode gently on, for the weather was as ſweet as in the month of May. On coming before the place, ſome knights and ſquires, to make a diſplay galloped up to the barriers, where they found a large body of croſs-bowmen drawn up in front of the gate, who by their ſhooting killed and wounded many horſes. The archers then advanced, and, poſting themſelves on the banks of the ditch, and at the barriers, attacked the croſs-bowmen. The aſſault was ſevere and laſted a conſiderable time; for the town was tolerably ſtrong, and difficult to be conquered. One ſide is ſituated on a perpendicular rock, impoſſible to be mounted: the other, indeed, is on the plain, but ſurrounded by wide ditches, which though not filled with water, cannot eaſily be croſſed.

'The knights and ſquires, however, did croſs them, and aſcended the banks to the walls, with targets on their heads, to defend themſelves from the arrows or whatever might be thrown down from the battlements. The archers ſhot ſo well, that ſcarcely any dared ſhew themſelves; and this

this attack was long continued, many on each ſide being killed or wounded. Towards evening, it ceaſed, on the trumpets ſounding the retreat; and the Engliſh returned to their camp, where they made themſelves comfortable, and attended to their wounded. Thierry de Soumain was ſo badly wounded in the arm, at the barriers, by a bolt from a croſs-bow, that it was neceſſary to have it forced through the arm; he was upwards of a month unable to uſe it, and obliged to bear it in a scarf.

'While the marſhal of the duke of Lancaſter's army was thus overrunning and turning Galicia to his intereſt, the duke and ducheſs, with their children, reſided quietly at Sant' Jago. They heard frequently from the king of Portugal, as a continual intercourſe was kept up between them on their mutual affairs.

'King John of Caſtille held his court at Validolid, attended by the French knights, whom he frequently conſulted on the ſtate of his kingdom; for he was perfectly acquainted with every thing that was paſſing around him. He ſaid to them, —'My fair ſirs, I greatly marvel that no ſuccour comes to me from France, to aſſiſt me in my diſtreſs; for my country will be loſt, if no reinforcements arrive to prevent it. The Engliſh keep the field; and I know for truth, that the duke of Lancaſter and king of Portugal have had an interview, and that the laſt is to marry one of the duke's daughters, for she has been betrothed to him; and, as ſoon as this marriage shall have taken place, you will ſee them unite together and

enter

enter my kingdom, and, when united, they will prove too much for me.'

'The French knights, to comfort him, replied, —'Do not be uneasy: if the English gain on one side they lose on another. We have certain intelligence, that the king of France, with upwards of an hundred thousand armed men, has at this moment invaded England, to conquer and destroy that whole country. When that shall be accomplished, and England reduced to a state of subjection from whence it can never rise, the king of France and his army will embark on board their navy, which is so considerable, and disembark during the course of the summer at Corunna. He will re-conquer in one month more than you have lost during the year, and surround the duke of Lancaster in such manner that you will see him fly to Portugal. Thus will you be revenged of your enemies; for be assured, that if France were not at this moment occupied with the conquest of England, you would have had, some time since, three or four thousand lances from thence. The king of France, his uncles and council, have a great affection for you, and are very anxious to put an end to your war. Never mind if the English keep the field, and borrow from you a little of your kingdom; before St. John's day shall come, they will be forced to restore the whole of it back to you.'

'Such were the conversations that frequently passed at Validolid between the king of Castille and his council, with the French knights. The king,

king, having ſuch an opinion of them, believed all they ſaid, and took comfort. They indeed thought what they had ſaid was truth; for they concluded the king of France had invaded England, according to the rumours ſpread throughout Caſtille. You muſt know that the duke of Lancaſter did not hear from his people one quarter of what was told them by pilgrims and merchants from Flanders; and, though the king of Portugal wrote frequently to inquire after the duke's health, theſe rumours prevented him from haſtening his preparations, and from demanding the lady Philippa for his queen. His council ſaid, that as all the intelligence from France and Flanders agreed England to be in a moſt perilous ſtate of being deſtroyed, neither the alliance nor marriage with the duke of Lancaſter or his daughter, would be of any advantage to him, and that he ſhould diſſemble his thoughts, but ſtill preſerve an outward appearance of great affection to the duke and ducheſs, by letters and otherwiſe, until he ſhould ſee what turn affairs would take.'

We will now for a while leave ſpeaking of Spain and Portugal, and return to France.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

THE KING OF FRANCE GOES TO LILLE, WITH THE INTENT TO INVADE ENGLAND.—SIR SIMON BURLEY ADVISES THE REMOVAL OF THE SHRINE OF ST. THOMAS A BECKET FROM CANTERBURY TO DOVER CASTLE, FOR FEAR OF THE FRENCH.

AT this period (1386,) the number of ſhips, galleys and veſſels of every deſcription, which had been collected to carry over to England the king of France and his army, were ſo great, that the oldeſt man then living had never ſeen nor heard of the like. Knights and ſquires were arming on all ſides, and, when they quitted their homes, they ſaid,—'We will invade theſe curſed English, who have done ſuch miſchief to France, and now avenge ourſelves for the loſſes they have cauſed us by the death of our fathers, brothers or friends.' It was twelve weeks before all the purveyances of the different lords were ready and embarked, ſo grandly had they provided themſelves. The report was kept up for ſome time in Flanders, that the king would be there on the morrow, to haſten them. Men were continually arriving from Gaſcony, Armagnac, the Toulouſain, Bigorre, Comminges, Auvergne, Berry, Limouſin, Poitou, Anjou, Maine, Brittany, Touraine, Blois, Orleans, Beauce, Normandy, Picardy, and from every province in France,

France, who quartered themſelves in Flanders and Artois.

When the middle of Auguſt came, which was the time fixed on for the invaſion taking place, in order the more to haſten thoſe from the diſtant parts of the realm; and, to ſhew that the king was in earneſt to embark, he took leave of queen Blanche, the ducheſs of Orleans and the other princeſſes. He heard a ſolemn maſs in the church of Nôtre Dame at Paris, and it was his intention, when he ſhould quit Paris, never to re-enter it until he had landed in England; and of this all the principal cities and towns were perſuaded.

The king of France went to Senlis, whither he was accompanied by his queen: the duke of Berry was in Berry, though his purveyances were collecting in Flanders and at Sluys, like the others. The duke of Burgundy was alſo in his own country, but he bade adieu to his ducheſs and children, and ſet off for Flanders, meaning to take leave of his aunt, the ducheſs of Brabant, in his way thither. On his departure from Burgundy, he travelled in great pomp and magnificence, attended by the admiral of France and the lord Guy de la Trimouille, unto Bruſſels, where the ducheſs and her ladies received him and his company with great joy. He tarried there two days, and then went to Mons in Hainault, where he found his daughter madame d'Oſtrevant, duke Albert, and his ſon the lord William of Hainault, count d'Oſtrevant, who entertained them handſomely, and conducted the duke

duke to Valenciennes, where he was lodged in the apartments of the count, and duke Albert at the hôtel of Vicongneras.

The duke of Burgundy, on leaving Valenciennes, went to Douay and Arras, where the ducheſs was waiting for him. From Senlis the king of France came to Compiegne, Noyon, Peronne, Bapaume and Arras; and there were ſuch numbers of men at arms pouring into thoſe countries from all quarters, that every thing was deſtroyed or devoured without a farthing being paid for any thing. The poor farmers, who had filled their barns with grain, had only the ſtraw, and, if they complained, were beaten or killed. The fiſh-ponds were drained of fish, and the houſes pulled down for firing, ſo that if the English had been there, they could not have committed greater waſte than this French army did. They ſaid, 'We have not at preſent any money, but shall have enough on our return, when we will pay for all.' The farmers, not daring to ſpeak out, curſed them inwardly, on ſeeing them seize what was intended for their families; and ſaid, 'Go, go to England, and may never a ſoul of you come back!'

The king of France arrived at Lille, with his two uncles of Burgundy and Bourbon; but the duke of Berry ſtill remained behind, in his own country, arranging his affairs. With the king were the duke of Bar, the duke of Lorraine, the count d'Armagnac, the count de Savoye, the count dauphin d'Auvergne, the count de Geneve, the count de St. Pol, the count d'Eu,

d'Eu, the count de Longueville, the lord de Coucy, ſir William de Namur, and ſo many of the great lords of France that I can never name them. It was ſaid that twenty thouſand knights and ſquires were to embark for England, which was indeed a goodly company, with about the ſame number of croſs-bows, including the Genoeſe, and twenty thouſand ſtout varlets.

Sir Oliver de Cliſſon was ſtill in Brittany making his preparations, and equipping his fleet at the port of Treguier, from whence he intended to embark his wooden town, that was to be put together, and erected on his landing in England, as you have before heard. The flower of Breton chivalry was to accompany the conſtable, ſuch as the viſcount de Rohan, the lords de Rays, de Beaumanoir, de Laval, de Rochefort, de Maleſtroit, the viſcount de Combor, ſir John de Maleſtroit, the lord de Dinant, the lord d'Ancenis, and five hundred ſpears, all picked men. The conſtable had always declared, that no one ought to be employed on this expedition if he were not a good man at arms and ſuch as could be depended on. He had ſaid to the admiral,—'Be careful not to ſuffer any boys or ſervants to embark on board the fleet, for they will do us more harm than good.' And the knights, unleſs they were of high rank, or had hired veſſels for themſelves, were not allowed to take with them more than one horſe and one ſervant. To ſay the truth, their arrangements were very well made: and it was the opinion of many, that if the army could have been land-

ed

ed together at the place they had fixed on in Orwell bay, the whole country would have been thrown into confuſion. Indeed, I believe there was little doubt of it; for the great lords, ſuch as prelates, abbots, and rich citizens were panic-ſtruck, but the commonalty and poorer ſort held it very cheap. Such knights and ſquires as were not rich, but eager for renown, were delighted, and ſaid to each other,—'Lord, what fine times are coming, ſince the king of France intends to viſit us! He is a valiant king and of great enterpriſe: there has not been ſuch a one in France theſe three hundred years. He will make his people good men at arms; and bleſſed may he be for thinking to invade us; for certainly we ſhall be all ſlain or made powerfully rich: one or other muſt happen.'

If the preparations for this invaſion were great in France, thoſe in England, for its defence, were not leſs ſo, as I have before mentioned, and will therefore ſlightly return to it.

The taxes in England were equally heavy with thoſe in France; but though they were very oppreſſive, the common people ſaid they ought not to complain, for they were raiſed for the defence of the country, and paid to knights and ſquires to guard their lands, and they were their labourers, who provided them with food, and the sheep from whom they took the wool; but, if England ſhould be conquered, they would be the greateſt loſers. No one was exempted from the payment of theſe taxes, ſo that two millions of florins were raiſed for the defence of the country,

try, and paid into the hands of the archbishop of York, the earl of Oxford, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir Michael de la Pole, ſir Simon Burley, ſir Peter Gouloufre, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir John Beauchamp, ſir John Saliſbury, and others of the king's privy council, who were appointed receivers and paymaſters of the above ſum, for the king's uncles were not conſulted in the buſineſs. They would not interfere, nor by ſo doing throw the kingdom into trouble, but exerted themſelves to the utmoſt in putting all the coaſt in a good ſtate of defence; for they moſt aſſuredly thought the king of France would attempt to land his army in England during the courſe of the ſummer.

The before-named receivers did in the king's name as they thought proper in reſpect to this tax; but the earl of Oxford was the moſt active, and made the greateſt advantage of it. Every thing was done by him, and without his conſent nothing; for which, when this alarm was over, the people were much diſſatisfied, and wanted to know what had become of the large ſums that had been raiſed; and the principal cities and towns, urged on by the king's uncles, would have an account how they had been diſburſed, as I will relate in proper time and place, for I wish not that any thing should be forgotten in this hiſtory.

Sir Simon Burley was governor of Dover-caſtle, and, from his ſituation, received frequent intelligence from France by the fiſhermen of the town, who related to him what they heard from the

French

French fiſhermen, as they were often obliged to adventure as far as Wiſſan or Bologne to obtain good fish. When the fishermen from France met them at ſea, they told them enough, and more than they knew; for, though there were wars, between France and England, they were never interrupted in their purſuits, nor attacked each other, but, on the contrary, gave mutual aſſiſtance, and bought or ſold, according as either had more fish than they were in want of; for, if they were to meddle in the national quarrels, there would be no fishing, and none would attempt it unleſs ſupported by men at arms. Sir Simon learnt from the fishermen that the king of France was abſolutely determined on the invaſion; that he intended to land one diviſion at or near Dover, and another at Sandwich, and that his forces were immenſe. He, as well as the reſt of England, believed all this was true; and one day he ſet out for Canterbury to viſit the abbey, which is very large and handſome; near it is Chriſtchurch, which is alſo rich and powerful.

The abbot inquired, 'What news?' and ſir Simon told him all he knew, adding, 'that the shrine of St. Thomas, ſo reſpectable and rich, was not ſafe in Canterbury, for the town was not ſtrong;* and if the French should come, ſome of the pillagers, through avarice, would make for Canterbury, which they would plunder, as well

* The walls of Canterbury were much out of repair; and there is an order now exiſting for their reparation, from the court of Chancery, in the 19th year of Richard II.—*Haſted's Kent.*

87325

as your abbey, and make particular enquiries after the shrine, and will take it away, to your great loſs. I would therefore adviſe, that you have it carried to Dover-caſtle, where it will be perfectly ſafe, though all England were loſt.' The abbot and all the convent were ſo much angered at this ſpeech, though meant well, that they replied,—'How! ſir Simon, would you wish to deſpoil this church of its jewel? If you are afraid yourſelf, gain courage, and shut yourſelf up in your caſtle of Dover, for the French will not be bold enough, nor in ſufficient force, to adventure themſelves ſo far.' This was the only anſwer he had; but ſir Simon perſiſted ſo long in his propoſition, that the common people grew diſcontented, and held him for an ill-inclined perſon, which, as I shall relate, they afterwards shewed more plainly. Sir Simon made but a short ſtay and returned to Dover.

CHAP. XIV.

THE KING OF FRANCE VISITS HIS FLEET AT SLUYS.—THE KING OF ARMENIA CROSSES TO ENGLAND, TO ATTEMPT A RECONCILIATION BETWEEN THE TWO KINGS.—THE ANSWER HE RECEIVES.

THE king of France, to shew his impatience for the invaſion and his diſlike of being at too great a diſtance, came to Sluys. The report was now daily current in Flanders and Artois, 'The king

king will embark Saturday, Tueſday or Thurſday.' Every day of the week they ſaid, 'He will embark to-morrow, or the day after.' The duke of Touraine, the king's brother, the biſhop of Beauvais, chancellor, and other great lords had taken leave of the king at Lille, and returned to Paris. I believe, indeed it was aſſured me for fact, that the duke was appointed regent during the king's abſence, in conjunction with the count de Blois and other principal barons, who had not been ordered on the invaſion.

The duke of Berry was ſtill behind, though he was advancing ſlowly, for he had no great deſire to go to England. The king of France and duke of Burgundy were much vexed at his delay, and wiſhed his arrival: however, the embarkation of ſtores continued at a vast expenſe to the great lords; for what was worth only one franc they were made to pay four; and thoſe who were hoping ſpeedily to croſs over valued not their money in making preparations, but ſeemed deſirous to rival each other in expenſe.

If the principal lords were well paid, thoſe of inferior rank ſuffered for it, as there was a month's pay due to them, for which the paymaster of the forces was unwilling to account; and he and the clerks of the treaſury told them to wait another week, and they ſhould be ſatisfied. Thus were they put off from week to week; and when they made them any payments it was only for eight days, when eight weeks were due. Some, who were ſo treated, became melancholy, and ſaid the

expedition

expedition would never ſucceed; and foreſeeing what would happen, whenever they could amaſs any money, like wiſe men, ſet out on their return home. The poor knights and ſquires, who were not retainers on the great lords, had expended their all; for every thing was ſo dear in Flanders, they had difficulty in procuring bread or wine. If they wiſhed to pawn their wages or arms, they could not obtain a farthing for what, when new, had cost them large ſums. There were ſuch crowds at Bruges, Damme, Ardembourg, and particularly at Sluys, when the king arrived, that it was difficult to find any lodgings.

The lords de St. Pol, de Coucy, d'Antoing, and the dauphin of Auvergne, with other barons from France, remained at Bruges to be more at their eaſe, and every now and then rode over to Sluys, to inquire from the king when they were to embark. They were told, within three or four days; or when the duke of Berry ſhould arrive or when the wind was favourable. There was always ſome delay; but the time paſſed, and the days became ſhorter and cold, with bad weather. Many of the lords were diſcontented they were ſo long in embarking, for their proviſion would be ſpoiled.

While they were waiting for the duke of Berry and the conſtable, the king of Armenia, who reſided in France, on a penſion from the king of ſix thouſand francs, deſirous to make a journey to England, in hopes of bringing about a peace, or at leaſt a truce between the two kings, left his

hôtel

hôtel of St. Ouen, near St. Denis, and, with few attendants, travelled to Boulogne, where he hired a veſſel, and, having a favourable wind, landed at Dover. He found there the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham, with a hundred men at arms and two thouſand archers to guard the place; for the rumour ran, that the French intended landing there, or at Sandwich. At this laſt place were the earls of Arundel and Northumberland. At Orwell, the earls of Oxford, Pembroke and Nottingham, and ſir Reginald Cobham, with three thouſand infantry. The king, and part of his council, remained in London, where he had intelligence daily from the different ports.

The king of Armenia, on his arrival at Dover, was very well received, and conducted by ſome knights to the uncles of the king, who entertained him handſomely, as they knew well how to do. At a proper opportunity they aſked him, 'whither he came? and what were the reaſons of his viſiting England?' To theſe queſtions he anſwered,—'that, in hopes of doing good, he had come to wait on the king of England and his council, to ſee if, by any means, he could negotiate a peace between him and the king of France. For this war,' added the king of Armenia, 'is not very becoming between them: the long continuance of it has greatly emboldened and raiſed the pride of the Turks and Saracens. No one now makes any oppoſition to them; and this has been the cauſe why I have loſt my crown and kingdom; nor have I any chance of recovering them, until

until a firm peace be eſtabliſhed in Chriſtendom. I would willingly explain this matter, which ſo nearly touches every true Chriſtian, to the king of England, as I have done to the king of France.'

The Engliſh lords aſked him, 'if the king of France had ſent him?' He ſaid,—'No one had ſent him; that he had come of his own accord, and ſolely with a view to do good, to ſee the king of England and his council, and to try if they would liſten to terms of peace.' They then aſked 'where the king of France was.' 'I believe he is now at Sluys; but I have not ſeen him ſince I took my leave of him at Senlis.' 'How can you then think of forming a treaty, when you have not been ſo charged by him? Should you enter into any terms with the king, our nephew, and his council, and the king of France, in the mean time, ſail from Sluys, and diſembark his large army in England, you would be much blamed, and your perſon run great riſks from the people.'

The king of Armenia replied,—'I have the greateſt confidence in the king of France, to whom I have ſent meſſengers to entreat he would neither embark nor put to ſea until I be returned to Sluys, and I am convinced he is ſo noble and conſiderate, that he will comply with my requeſt. I therefore beg of you, through pity and love of goodneſs, to procure me an interview with the king of England, that I may ſpeak to him, for I deſire greatly to ſee him; or if you, who are his uncles, and the moſt powerful of his ſubjects, be autho-

riſed

riſed to give me anſwers to my demands, I hope that you will inſtantly do ſo.'

Thomas, earl of Buckingham, ſaid,—'King of Armenia, we are ſolely ordered here by the king and his council, to guard and defend the frontiers, and we do not any way concern ourſelves with the government of the realm, unleſs we be ſpecially commanded by him. Since motives of goodneſs, or the appearance of them, have brought you hither, you are welcome; but you muſt not expect to receive from us any definitive anſwers to ſuch demands as you may make; and, though we are not now of the king's council, we will have you conducted to London without danger or expenſe.' The king of Armenia replied, 'that he greatly thanked them, and wiſhed for nothing more than to ſee and converſe with the king of England.'

After having refreſhed himſelf for one day at Dover, and held many converſations with the king's uncles, he ſet off, well eſcorted, to protect him on the road. He continued his journey until he arrived at London, where he was much ſtared at by the Londoners: the better ſort, however, ſhewed him every honour and reſpect. Having fixed on his lodgings, at a proper time and hour he waited on the king, who reſided in a private manner at the wardrobe; but his council were in London, each at his own houſe; for the Londoners were ſo panic-ſtruck, they thought of nothing but how to fortify their town.

When the arrival of the king of Armenia was publicly known, the king's council aſſembled at

the wardrobe to learn the news, and what could have brought that king, at this time of trouble and alarm, to England. The king of Armenia entered the preſence-chamber, and the two kings having mutually ſaluted each other, the king of Armenia began his ſpeech, by declaring, the cauſes for his coming were principally to ſee the king of England, which he had never before done; that he was much gratified in being in his preſence, from which he flattered himſelf good would ariſe; and alſo to attempt to avert the great peſtilence that was ready to befal England: not that either the king of France or his council had ſent him thither, for he was come of his own free will, to endeavour to make a peace or a truce between the two crowns. He paid many compliments both to the king and to his council. He was briefly anſwered as follows: 'Sir king, you are welcome to this country, for our king and ſelves are glad to ſee you. We muſt inform you, that the king has not all his council at this moment with him, but they will ſhortly aſſemble, as he had ſummoned them, and you ſhall then have an anſwer.'

The king of Armenia was contented with this, took his leave, and returned to the houſe where he was lodged. Within four days, the king was adviſed what anſwer to make: I believe he conſulted his uncles on the ſubject, but they were not preſent when it was given. The king went to Weſtminſter, where his council was aſſembled, and thither the king of Armenia was invited. When in the preſence, the king of England was

ſeated

ſeated according to cuſtom, then the king of Armenia and the prelates and lords of the council. The king of Armenia was deſired to repeat what he had before told the king and a part of his council. He did ſo in an elegant harangue, ſhewing how Chriſtendom was too much weakened by the deſtructive wars of France and England, and that the knights and ſquires of the two countries thought of nothing but joining one party or other: by which the empire of Conſtantinople would be deſtroyed, where formerly the gentlemen of France and England uſed to take pleaſure in ſeeking deeds of arms, and that his own kingdom was already loſt. He therefore entreated, through the love of God, they would liſten to ſome terms of peace between the two kings.'

The archbiſhop of Canterbury, who had beforehand been ordered by the king and council to deliver the anſwer, replied; 'King of Armenia, it is not uſual, nor has it ever been admitted, that in ſuch weighty matters as are now in diſpute between the king of England and his adverſary of France, the king of England ſhould have requeſts made him, with an army ready to invade his country. I will therefore declare our opinion, that you return to the French army, and prevail on them to retreat to France; and, when we ſhall be fully aſſured that every man has retired to his home, do you return hither, and we will then pay attention to any treaty you ſhall propoſe.'

This was the anſwer the king of Armenia received. He dined that day with the king, who

paid

paid him every poſſible honour, and offered him handſome preſents of gold and ſilver; but he refuſed them all, though he had need of them, and would only accept a ſingle ring, worth one hundred francs. After the dinner, which was ſplendid and good, he returned to his lodgings, for he had received his anſwer, and on the morrow ſet out for Dover, making two days journey of it. He there took leave of the Engliſh lords, and embarked on board a paſſage-boat to Calais, whence he went to Sluys. He related to the king of France and his uncles the journey he had made to England, and what anſwer he had received: but the king and his lords paid no attention to it, and ſent him to France; for they were reſolved to ſail the firſt fair wind for England, after the arrival of the duke of Berry and the conſtable. Hitherto the wind had been unfavourable: it would never have ſerved them to land in thoſe parts they intended to attempt, but was very fair to carry them to Scotland.

CHAP. XV.

THE DUKE OF BERRY LEAVES PARIS FOR SLUYS. —THE CONSTABLE, AFTER SUFFERING MANY DELAYS FROM CONTRARY WINDS, AT LENGTH JOINS THE KING OF FRANCE.

THE duke of Berry arrived at Paris, and, after hearing maſs at the church of Nôtre Dame, took

took his leave, making it to be underſtood that he would never return until he had been in England, although his intentions were quite the contrary; for, as the ſeaſon was ſo far advanced, he had no deſire to undertake it. On his road, he daily received letters and meſſengers from the king and the duke of Burgundy, to haſten him, and to ſay they were only waiting for his coming to embark. The duke of Berry continued his march, though by ſhort days journeys.

The conſtable of France embarked at Treguier, a town on the ſea-coaſt of Brittany, with a fine body of men at arms, and ample purveyances on board ſeventy-two large veſſels. Some of them were freighted with the wooden town that was to be erected on their landing in England. The conſtable had a favourable wind when he left the harbour: but, when he approached the Engliſh coaſt, it became contrary, and the farther they advanced the more violent it blew. When oppoſite to Margate at the mouth of the Thames, the ſtorm was ſo violent, it diſperſed the fleet, whether the mariners would or not, and there were not twenty ſail together. Some were blown into the Thames, where they were captured by the Engliſh; and among them was one that had two or three parts of the wooden town on board, and the workmen who were to erect it. They and the town were ſent to London, which much pleaſed the king and the citizens. Seven other veſſels of the fleet, laden with ſtores and proviſion, were driven on the coaſt of Zealand, and ſeized; but

the

the conſtable and his lords, with much difficulty, arrived at Sluys, where they were joyfully received by the king and his barons. The moment the king ſaw the conſtable, he ſaid,—'Conſtable, what ſay you? when ſhall we ſail? I have for certain a great deſire to ſee England. I therefore pray you to haſten the buſineſs, and that we embark as ſpeedily as poſſible. My uncle Berry will be here inſtantly, for he is now at Lille.' 'Sire,' replied the conſtable, 'we cannot ſail until the wind be favourable. This ſouth wind, which is completely againſt us, has blown ſo long, that the ſailors ſay they have never ſeen it ſo conſtant in one point as it has been for theſe two months.'

'Conſtable,' ſaid the king, 'on my faith, I have been on board my ſhip. I like the ſea much, and I believe I ſhall be a good ſailor, for I was not in the leaſt ſick.' 'In the name of God,' anſwered the conſtable, 'it was not ſo with me, for we were in great danger in our voyage from Brittany hither.' The king would know how, and in what manner, which the conſtable related to him, adding, 'By ill fortune and the ſtorm which blew from the Engliſh coaſt, we have loſt our men and veſſels, for which I am exceedingly ſorry; and if I could make up their loſs I would, but at this moment it is not poſſible.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

THE LORD DE GUISTELLES APPEASES AN INSURRECTION OF THE MEN OF BRUGES AGAINST THE FRENCH.—THE INVASION OF ENGLAND IS GIVEN UP, ON ACCOUNT OF CONTRARY WINDS, THE NEAR APPROACH OF WINTER, AND IN CONFORMITY WITH THE ADVICE OF THE DUKE OF BERRY, WHICH CAUSES GREAT REJOICINGS IN ENGLAND.

WHILE the king of France and his conſtable were thus converſing and arranging different matters, winter was begun, and the lords and army lay expoſed to the cold, and to ſome danger; for the Flemings wiſhed them away, more eſpecially the lower ſorts. They ſaid, when among themſelves, 'Why the devil does not the king free us from them, by paſſing over to England? Are we not ſufficiently poor without theſe Frenchmen adding to it?' Others anſwered, 'You will not ſee them croſs over this year. They think they ſhall inſtantly conquer England; but it will not be ſo: it is not ſo eaſy a matter, for the Engliſh are made of other ſtuff than the French. What can they do to England? When the Engliſh invaded France, they ſhut themſelves up in their caſtles and ſtrong towns, and fled before them like larks before a ſparrow-hawk.'

It was more particularly in Bruges, where the greater reſort of the French was, that the diſcon-

tents were the higheſt; and the ſmalleſt triffle was ſufficient to ſet them by the ears. At length it became ſerious, and was begun by a few French varlets, who had beaten and wounded ſome of the Flemings: the artificers then roſe, and, having armed themſelves, aſſembled in the market-place. Not one French knight or ſquire would have eſcaped death; for many of the Flemings had not forgotten the battle of Roſebecque, and were eager to revenge themſelves for their fathers, brothers or friends who had been there ſlain, but God, providentially for the French, ſent thither the lord de Guiſtelles.

When he learnt that the common people were arming themſelves, and that others were running to their houſes to do the ſame, he ſaw the town would be infallibly ruined: he therefore mounted his horſe, attended by no more than four or five others, and rode up and down the ſtreets; and, whenever he met any of the townſmen armed going towards the market-place, he ſaid to them, —'My good people, what are you about? whither are you going? Would you ruin yourſelves? have you not had enough of war? are you not every day prevented from following your trades? You may ſo act as to cauſe the complete deſtruction of Bruges; for do you not know that the king of France is now in the neighbourhood with his whole army?'

Thus did the lord de Guiſtelles by his kind ſpeeches calm them, and make them return to their homes; but this would not have been ſo

eaſily

eaſily done, had he not fortunately been in Bruges. The barons and knights of France were ſo much alarmed, they had ſhut themſelves up in their quarters, to wait the event.

On the arrival of the duke of Berry at Sluys, the king ſaid to him,—'Ha, ha, fair uncle, though I was ſo anxious to ſee you, you have been long in coming: why have you made ſuch delay, when we ought to have been at this moment in England, where we ſhould have combated our enemies?'

The duke laughed and made his excuſes for the delay, but did not at firſt deliver his real ſentiments: he wiſhed to examine the ſtate of the purveyances and the fleet, which made ſo beautiful a ſhow in the road that it was delightful to ſee it. He had been at Sluys for more than ſeven days, and it was daily rumoured they were to ſail on the morrow; but in truth the wind was quite contrary to ſailing for England. As it was now St. Andrew's tide, the weather was hazy; and you may judge if this were a fit ſeaſon for ſo many noble perſons to put to ſea as were now waiting to embark at Sluys, whoſe ſtores and proviſion were on board.

Some of the young princes of the blood-royal, with a deſire to diſplay their courage, had indeed made a few cruiſes near the harbour, ſaying, that they would be the firſt to land in England, ſhould none others venture thither. In this number were ſir Robert and ſir Philip d'Artois, ſir Henry de Bar, ſir Peter de Navarre, ſir Peter d'Albreth, ſir

Bernard d'Armagnac, with many more. Theſe young lords, having once begun, were ſo impatient to fail in earneſt, that a council was held, in the preſence of the king, to determine how they ſhould proceed. The duke of Berry broke up the whole; and gave ſuch well-grounded reaſons, that the greater part of thoſe who were the moſt forward to embark were diſcouraged; and ſaid it would be folly and madneſs to adviſe the king, who was then but a child, to put to ſea in ſuch weather, and to make war on a people and country, whoſe roads no one was acquainted with, and a country which was likewiſe diſadvantageous for warlike exploits. 'Now, ſuppoſe,' ſaid the duke of Berry, 'we were all landed in England, we cannot fight the Engliſh unleſs they like it, and we dare not leave our purveyances behind, for whoever ſhould do ſo would loſe the whole. But if any one wiſhed to make this voyage, though of no great length, he would do it in the middle of ſummer, and not in the heart of winter. Summon all the ſailors who are here, and they will tell you that what I ſay is true; and that, notwithſtanding the very numerous fleet we have collected, ſhould we put to ſea, of the fifteen hundred ſail, there would never be three hundred together, or within ſight. Now, conſider what riſks we may run; but I do not ſay this out of any deſire to be excuſed from being of the party myſelf, but ſolely as I believe it ſound ſenſe, and that the council, and the majority of France, are of my way of thinking. I am willing, brother of Burgundy,

Burgundy, that you and I undertake this expedition, but I will never adviſe the king to do ſo; for, ſhould any accident happen to him, the whole blame would be laid on us for having conſented to it.' 'In God's name,' replied the king of France, 'I am reſolved to go, ſhould no one follow me.' The lords laughed, and ſaid the king has a ſtrong inclination to embark.

It was determined in this council, that the invaſion ſhould be deferred to April or May; and that what ſtores could be preſerved, ſuch as biſcuit, ſalted meat and wine, ſhould be put in warehouſes: and regulations were made for the men at arms to return to Sluys in the month of March.

All this was ſoon known; and thus was the grand expedition broken up, which had coſt France one hundred thouſand francs, thirty times told. The council had ordered that the king ſhould return to France, and the different lords to their homes; that all things ſhould remain on the ſame footing on which they then reſted until the ſpring, when every one ſhould be prepared to obey the king's ſummons, and commence their voyage under more fortunate auſpices than at this moment.

It would have ſurpriſed any one to have ſeen the rage of the knights and ſquires on hearing theſe orders: more eſpecially thoſe who had come from diſtant parts, and had expended all their money, in the hope of amply repaying themſelves in England. Among them were the count de Savoye,

de Savoye, the count d'Armagnac, the count dauphin d'Auvergne, and a hundred great barons, who departed much diſcontented at not having ſeen England. The king was equally vexed, but he could not amend it.

The army now ſeparated, ſome pleaſed and others angry; but the ſervants of the principal lords ſtaid behind, for the benefit of their maſters, and to ſell off their ſtores: in this, great loſſes accrued; for what had coſt one hundred francs was diſpoſed of for ten, and even under. The count dauphin d'Auvergne aſſured me on his faith, that for his ſtores, which had coſt him ten thouſand francs, he did not receive one thouſand when reſold: his ſervants, like thoſe of others, ſuffered every thing to go to ruin.

When news of this reached England, thoſe who were afraid of the French coming were greatly rejoiced; while others were ſorry, for they expected to have made themſelves rich from them. A grand feaſt was given in the city of London to all who had been appointed to guard the different harbours. The king kept his Chriſtmas, in a ſolemn manner, at Weſtminſter, and there created three dukes; firſt, the earl of Cambridge, duke of York; his brother, the earl of Buckingham, duke of Glouceſter; the earl of Oxford, duke of Ireland. Theſe feaſts were long and magnificently continued, and the people of England thought they had eſcaped from great danger; but others, who had not the ſame alarms, ſaid, that the army and navy, which had been ſo pompouſly collected

lected at Sluys, were only to frighten England, and force the duke of Lancaſter to return from Galicia, where he was conquering towns and caſtles at his pleaſure.

CHAP. XVII.

TWO CHAMPIONS TILT AT PARIS, FOR LIFE OR DEATH.

ABOUT this period, there was much converſation in France reſpecting a duel which was to be fought, for life or death, at Paris. It had been thus ordered by the parliament of Paris, where the cauſe, which had laſted a year, had been tried, between a ſquire called James le Gris and John de Carogne, both of them of the houſehold of Peter count d'Alençon, and eſteemed by him; but more particularly James le Gris, whom he loved above all others, and placed his whole confidence in him. As this duel made ſo great a noiſe, many from diſtant parts, on hearing of it, came to Paris to be ſpectators. I will relate the cauſe, as I was then informed.

It chanced that ſir John de Carogne took it into his head he ſhould gain glory if he undertook a voyage to the Holy Land, having long had an inclination to go thither. He took leave of his lord, the count d'Alençon, and of his wife, who was then a young and handſome lady, and left her in his caſtle, called Argenteil, on the borders of Perche, and began his journey towards the ſea-

ſide.

ſide. The lady remained, with her houſehold, in this caſtle, living in the moſt decent manner. Now it happened (this is the matter of quarrel) that the devil, by divers and perverſe temptations, entered the body of James le Gris, and induced him to commit a crime, for which he afterwards paid.

He caſt his thoughts on the lady of ſir John de Carogne, whom he knew to be reſiding with her attendants, at the caſtle of Argenteil. One day, therefore, he ſet out, mounted on the fineſt horſe of the count, and arrived, full gallop, at Argenteil, where he diſmounted. The ſervants made a handſome entertainment for him, becauſe they knew he was a particular friend, and attached to the ſame lord as their maſter; and the lady, thinking no ill, received him with pleaſure, led him to her apartment, and ſhewed him many of her works. James, fully intent to accompliſh his wickedneſs, begged of her to conduct him to the dungeon, for that his viſit was partly to examine it. The lady inſtantly complied, and led him thither; for, as ſhe had the utmoſt confidence in his honour, ſhe was not accompanied by valet or chambermaid. As ſoon as they had entered the dungeon, James le Gris faſtened the door unnoticed by the lady, who was before him, thinking it might have been the wind, as he gave her to underſtand.

When they were thus alone, James embraced her, and diſcovered what his intentions were: the lady was much aſtoniſhed, and would willingly have

have eſcaped had ſhe been able, but the door was faſtened; and James, who was a ſtrong man, held her tight in his arms, and flung her down on the floor, and had his will of her. Immediately afterward, he opened the door of the dungeon, and made himſelf ready to depart. The lady, exaſperated with rage at what had paſſed, remained ſilent, in tears; but, on his departure, ſhe ſaid to him,—'Jemmy, Jemmy, you have not done well in thus deflowering me; the blame, however, ſhall not be mine, but the whole be laid on you, if it pleaſe God my huſband ever return.'

James mounted his horſe, and, quitting the caſtle, haſtened back to his lord, the count d'Alençon, in time to attend his riſing at nine o'clock: he had been ſeen in the hôtel of the count at four o'clock that morning. I am thus particular, becauſe all theſe circumſtances were inquired into, and examined by the commiſſioners of the parliament, when the cauſe was before them.

The lady de Carogne, on the day this unfortunate event befel her, remained in her caſtle, and paſſed it off as well as ſhe could, without mentioning one word of it to either chambermaid or valet, for ſhe thought by making it public ſhe would have more ſhame than honour; but ſhe retained in her memory the day and hour James le Gris had come to the caſtle.

The lord de Carogne returned from his voyage, and was joyfully received by his lady and houſehold, who feaſted him well. When night came, ſir John went to bed, but his lady excuſed herſelf;

ſelf; and, on his kindly preſſing her to come to him, ſhe walked very penſively up and down the chamber. At laſt, when the houſehold were in bed, ſhe flung herſelf on her knees at his bedſide, and bitterly bewailed the inſult ſhe had ſuffered. The knight would not believe it could have happened; but at length, ſhe urged it ſo ſtrongly, he did believe her, and ſaid,—'Certainly, lady, if the matter has paſſed as you ſay, I forgive you, but the ſquire ſhall die; and I ſhall conſult your and my relations on the ſubject: ſhould you have told me a falſehood, never more ſhall you live with me.' The lady again and again aſſured him, that what ſhe had ſaid was the pure truth.

On the morrow, the knight ſent ſpecial meſſengers with letters to his friends and neareſt relations of his wife, deſiring them to come inſtantly to Argenteil, ſo that in a few days they were all at his caſtle. When they were aſſembled, he led them into an apartment, and told them the reaſons of his ſending for them, and made his lady relate moſt minutely every thing that had paſſed during his abſence. When they had recovered their aſtoniſhment, he aſked their advice how to act: they ſaid, he ſhould wait on his lord, the count d'Alençon, and tell him the fact. This he did; but the count, who much loved James le Gris, diſbelieved it, and appointed a day for the parties to come before him, and deſired the lady might attend to give her evidence againſt the man whom ſhe thus accuſed.

She attended as deſired, accompanied by a great

great number of her relations; and the examinations and pleadings were carried on before the count to a great length. James le Gris boldly denied the charge, declared it was falſe, and wondered much how he could have incurred ſuch mortal hatred from the lady. He proved by the houſehold of the count, that he had been ſeen in the caſtle at four o'clock in the morning: the count ſaid, that he was in his bed-chamber at nine o'clock, and that it was quite impoſſible for any one to have ridden three and twenty leagues and back again, and do what he was charged with, in four hours and a half. The count told the lady he would ſupport his ſquire, and that ſhe muſt have dreamed it. He commanded, that henceforward all ſhould be buried in oblivion, and, under pain of incurring his diſpleaſure, nothing farther done in the buſineſs.

The knight, being a man of courage, and believing what his wife had told him, would not ſubmit to this, but went to Paris and appealed to the parliament. The parliament ſummoned James le Gris, who replied, and gave pledges to obey whatever judgment the parliament ſhould give. The cauſe laſted upwards of a year, and they could not any way compromiſe it, for the knight was poſitive, from his wife's information, of the fact, and declared, that ſince it was now ſo public, he would purſue it until death. The count d'Alençon, for this, conceived a great hatred againſt the knight, and would have had him put to death, had he not have placed himſelf

ſelf under the ſafeguard of the parliament. It was long pleaded, and the parliament at laſt, becauſe they could not produce other evidence than herſelf againſt James le Gris, judged it ſhould be decided in the tilt-yard, by a duel for life or death. The knight, the ſquire and the lady were inſtantly put under arreſt until the day of this mortal combat, which, by order of parliament, was fixed for the enſuing Monday, in the year 1387; at which time the king of France and his barons were at Sluys, intending to invade England.

The king, on hearing of this duel, declared he would be preſent at it. The dukes of Berry, Burgundy, Bourbon, and the conſtable of France, being alſo deſirous of ſeeing it, agreed it was proper he ſhould be there. The king, in conſequence, ſent orders to Paris to prolong the day of the duel, for that he would be preſent. This order was punctually obeyed, and the king and his lords departed for France. The king kept the feaſt of the Calends at Arras, and the duke of Burgundy at Lille. In the mean time, the men at arms made for their different homes, as had been ordered by the marſhals; but the principal chiefs went to Paris, to witneſs the combat.

When the king of France was returned to Paris, liſts were made for the champions in the place of St. Catherine, behind the Temple; and the lords had erected, on one ſide, ſcaffolds, the better to ſee the fight. The crowd of people was wonderful. The two champions entered the liſts armed

armed at all points, and each was ſeated in a chair oppoſite the other: the count de St. Pol directed ſir John de Carogne, and the retainers of the count d'Alençon James le Gris. On the knight entering the field, he went to his lady, who was covered with black and ſeated on a chair, and ſaid,—'Lady, from your accuſation, and in your quarrel, am I thus adventuring my life to combat James le Gris: you know whether my cauſe be loyal and true.' 'My lord,' ſhe replied, 'it is ſo; and you may fight ſecurely, for your cauſe is good.'

The lady remained ſeated, making fervent prayers to God and the virgin, entreating humbly, that through her grace and interceſſion, ſhe might gain the victory according to her right. Her affliction was great, for her life depended on the event; and, ſhould her huſband loſe the victory, ſhe would have been burnt, and he would have been hanged. I am ignorant, for I never had any converſation with her or the knight, whether ſhe had not frequently repented of having pushed matters ſo far as to place herſelf and huſband in ſuch peril; but it was now too late, and ſhe muſt abide the event. The two champions were then advanced, and placed oppoſite to each other; when they mounted their horſes, and made a handſome appearance, for they were both expert men at arms. They ran their firſt courſe without hurt to either. After the tilting, they diſmounted, and made ready to continue the fight. They behaved with courage; but ſir John de Carogne was, at

the

the firſt onſet wounded in the thigh, which alarmed all his friends: notwithſtanding this, he fought ſo deſperately that he ſtruck down his adverſary, and, thruſting his ſword through the body, cauſed his inſtant death; when he demanded of the ſpectators, if he had done his duty: they replied, that he had. The body of James le Gris was delivered to the hangman, who dragged it to Montfaucon, and there hanged it.

Sir John de Carogne approached the king, and fell on his knees: the king made him riſe, and ordered one thouſand francs to be paid him that very day: he alſo retained him of his houſehold with a penſion of two hundred livres a-year, which he received as long as he lived. Sir John, after thanking the king and his lords, went to his lady and kiſſed her: they went together to make their offering in the church of nôtre Dame, and then returned to their home.

Sir John de Carogne did not remain long after in France, but ſet off, in company with the lord Boucicaut, ſir John des Bordes and ſir Lewis Grat, to viſit the holy ſepulchre, and the ſultan of the Turks, whoſe fame was much talked of in France. Sir Robinet de Boulogne was alſo with him: he was ſquire of honour to the king of France, and had travelled much over the world.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

THE DEATH OF PETER KING OF ARRAGON.—HIS SUCCESSOR, KING JOHN, DETAINS PRISONER THE ARCHBISHOP OF BORDEAUX, WHO WAS NEGOTIATING, FOR THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, THE PAYMENT OF CERTAIN SUMS WHICH HE CLAIMED AS DUE TO HIM FROM ARRAGON.

ABOUT Candlemas of this year (1387), king Peter of Arragon lay on his death-bed. When he found there were no hopes of his recovery, he ſent for his two ſons, John and Martin*, to whom he ſaid,—'My fair children, I leave you well eſtabliſhed, and the affairs of my kingdom properly arranged. Live peaceably and lovingly and you will gain honour and renown. With regard to eccleſiaſtical matters, for my conſcience ſake and greater ſafety, I have always been neuter: do you do the ſame, until the knowledge, which pope is the true one, ſhall be more apparent.'

His two ſons dutifully replied, that they would do ſo, and punctually obey whatever he ſhould

*Martin was king of Sicily, and on the death of John, killed by a fall from his horſe in purſuing an enormous wolf, ſucceeded to the crown of Arragon. John did not follow his father's counſels with reſpect to the diſputed tiara, but acknowledged Clement VII.—*Art de Verifier les Dates.*

order.

order. The king died soon after. He was a valiant man in his time, and had conſiderably added to the crown of Arragon by the conqueſt of Majorça, which he kept. He was buried in the city of Barcelona, and there lies.

When the death of the king of Arragon was known at Avignon, the pope and cardinals inſtantly ſent off letters to the king of France, his uncles, and to the duke and ducheſs of Bar, who were his ſupporters and parents to the young queen of Arragon, the lady Jolante*, and to the queen herſelf, and were ſo buſy, that the whole court of Arragon acknowledged him as pope. The duke and ducheſs of Bar wrote preſſing letters to their daughter, as did the king of France, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who ſent a cardinal as ambaſſador, to inſtruct the new king, his brother, and ſubjects. The cardinal, with the aſſiſtance of the queen, who paid too much attention to what her relations had urged, gained over the king, who had before determined to follow the example of his father in preſerving a neutrality, and the whole kingdom to the obedience of pope Clement.

At the time of the late king of Arragon's death, the archbiſhop of Bordeaux was at Barcelona. He had been ſent thither by the duke of Lancaſter, and I will explain the cauſe of his journey. The late prince of Wales (who, though only duke of Aquitaine, was much feared by his neighbours,

* The lady Jolante was his ſecond wife. He was firſt married to Jane, daughter of John count d'Armagnac.

the

the kings of France, Arragon, Caſtille and Navarre, and even by the king of the Saracens, who had heard of his great proweſs and renown, had entered into a treaty with the king of Arragon, which had been ſworn to, and ſealed by each party, as well as by the king of England, that neither the prince nor the king of England, nor their ſucceſſors, would ever wage war againſt Arragon, ſo long as the king of Arragon and his heirs ſhould ſerve the lord of Aquitaine with five hundred ſpears, againſt any enemy with whom he was at war; and that, if he choſe not to ſend his men, he bound himſelf to pay a certain ſum of money.

Ten years of arrears were now due from Arragon: for the king had never paid any thing, nor done any ſervice to the king of England nor to his deputies. When the duke of Lancaſter left England, he brought with him letters-patent, ſealed with the great ſeal of the realm, in the preſence of the king and his council, appointing him lieutenant, for the king, over all the countries of Bordeaux, Bayonne and Aquitaine, giving him regal power to demand whatever might be owing from Arragon, and from all other parts dependant or allied to England. They alſo gave the duke power to retain, for his own uſe, whatever ſums might be due, and to give receipts, which would be acknowledged as legal.

While the duke was at Sant Jago, he bethought himſelf of the king of Arragon, and that he was indebted to him a very large ſum

of arrears, by virtue of his commiſſion, and that it would come now, with other aids, very opportunely, to carry on his war againſt Caſtille.

During his reſidence at Sant Jago, he ſent ſome of his council to Bordeaux, to the archbiſhop, and ſir John Harpedon, the ſénéſchal, ordering one or both of them to ſet out for Arragon, and remonſtrate ſtrongly with the king, on the large ſums he had long owed the king of England, as duke of Aquitaine.

The archbiſhop and ſénéſchal, having weighed the orders from the duke, thought it beſt for the ſénéſchal to remain at Bordeaux, and the archbiſhop to undertake the embaſſy. He therefore ſet out, but arrived in Arragon, unluckily, when the king was on his death-bed. When he was deceaſed, the archbiſhop followed the princes and council of Arragon to the interment at Barcelona, and then remonſtrated ſo ſtrongly, as it ſeemed to the council, that he was ordered to priſon: though not cloſely confined, he was forbidden to leave the city of Barcelona.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER MAKES WAR ON ARRAGON.—THE ARCHBISHOP OF BORDEAUX IS RELEASED.—THE VISCOUNTESS OF CASTELBON, SUSPECTED OF HAVING ADMITTED THE ENGLISH INTO HER CASTLE, APPEASES THE KING OF ARRAGON, THROUGH THE INTERFERENCE OF THE COUNT DE FOIX.

WHEN news was brought to Bordeaux of the impriſonment of the archbiſhop, the ſénéſchal ſaid,—'I am not ſurpriſed at it: the archbiſhop is too hot-headed. I believe it would have been better had I gone thither: I ſhould have ſpoken more calmly; and there is a method of urging claims ſuited to different perſons.' The ſénéſchal ſent information of what had happened to the duke of Lancaſter, who was very wroth with the king of Arragon and his council, for having impriſoned ſuch a perſon as the archbiſhop of Bordeaux, when negotiating his buſineſs.

The duke wrote orders for the garriſon of Lourde inſtantly to invade Arragon, and attack Barcelona, where the archbiſhop was confined. The governor, John de Béarn, who ſtiled himſelf ſénéſchal of Bigorre, Peter d'Anchin, Ernaulton de Reſten, Ernaulton de Sainte Colombe, and the whole garriſon, were much delighted with theſe orders, and overran the king-

dom of Arragon as far as Barcelona, ſo that no merchants dared venture without its walls. In addition to this miſchief, the principal towns of Arragon would not conſent to the king's wiſhes, of being crowned, unleſs he would firſt promiſe, and ſolemnly ſwear, that no taxes, pay for ſoldiers, or other impoſitions, ſhould be raiſed in the country; and unleſs he would engage for a compliance with other demands, which the king and his council thought very unreaſonable and unjuſt. He threatened to make war upon them, more particularly on thoſe of Barcelona, who he ſaid were too rich and preſumptuous.

There was, at this period, in Languedoc, on the borders of Rouergue and Auvergne, towards Peſenas and Uſès, a band of armed men, who called themſelves Routes, that were daily multiplying to do evil. Four men at arms were their leaders, who made war on every man they met on horſeback, caring not whom. Their names were, Peter de Montfaucon, Geoffry Chaſtelier, Hainge de Sorge and le Goulet. Theſe had under them full four hundred combatants, who ruined all the country wherever they haunted. They were mightily rejoiced when they heard of the archbiſhop of Bordeaux's impriſonment, of the duke of Lancaſter's making war on the Arragonians, and that the king of Arragon was diſſatisfied with his ſubjects, in the principal towns; for ſuch people always love miſchief, in preference to good.

They therefore reſolved to march towards the frontiers

frontiers of Arragon and ſurpriſe ſome fort, which the king or principal towns would negotiate with them to regain. They ſet out, and made for the caſtle of Duren *, which they had planned to ſurpriſe. This caſtle is in the archbiſhoprick of Narbonne, between France and Arragon, and ſituated preciſely on the limits of the two kingdoms.

They arrived there by night-fall undiſcovered, and, finding it weakly guarded, ſoon conquered it, to the great diſmay of all the country, eſpecially of Perpignan, which is but four leagues diſtant from this caſtle.

The garriſon from Lourde, this ſame week, captured likewiſe a caſtle in Arragon, four leagues from Barcelona, called the old caſtle of Rolbais, belonging to the viſcounteſs of Caſtelbon, couſin-german to the count de Foix. The lady was much ſurpriſed at this event, and went to her couſin, the count de Foix, to beg, for God's ſake, he would get her caſtle reſtored to her; for thoſe who had won it were from his country of Béarn. The count, in his anſwer, deſired her not to be alarmed; for that her caſtle had been taken ſolely to harraſs Barcelona from thence, as the archbishop of Bordeaux was in confinement there for a trifling cauſe, and that she ſhould have it again undamaged. The lady was ſatisfied with this anſwer, but kept it ſecret, and went to reſide at another caſtle, near Roquebertin.

* Duren. Q. if not Durban.

Thoſe

Thoſe of Duren, Rolbais, and the garriſon from Lourde, kept up a ſevere warfare on the borders of Arragon. The king, indeed, winked at this, that the towns might be punished, but their diſcontents increaſed; for thoſe of Barcelona, Perpignan and other towns, could not carry on their commerce without being made priſoners, and ranſomed. They determined to ſet the archbishop of Bordeaux at liberty, but, as was right, to conſult firſt the king on the ſubject. They, in conſequence, negotiated privately with don Martin, the king's brother, who was very popular in the country, that he would interfere between them and the king, and obtain peace with thoſe of Lourde and Rolbais. In order to encourage their loyalty, he engaged to do what they deſired, and prevailed on his brother to give the archbishop his liberty, and ſend him back to the Bordelois.

Shortly afterward, by the count de Foix's exertions, the viſcounteſs recovered her caſtle, and thoſe who had captured it departed, in return for the ſervice the count had done to the duke of Lancaſter in the courſe of this year. The king of Arragon, ſeeing the viſcounteſs ſo quickly regain her caſtle, ſent for her, and, when in his preſence, charged her with having admitted the Engliſh into her caſtle to make war on him, for which she had been very criminal. The lady clearly exculpated herſelf, ſaying,—'My lord, as God may help me and mine, and by the faith I owe you, when I heard of my caſtle being taken, I had never

any

any connection, nor entered into any treaty with the Engliſh. I inſtantly informed my couſin the count de Foix of it, and begged of him, for God's ſake, to aid me to recover my caſtle, as it had been taken by the garriſon from Lourde, who are his ſubjects and from Béarn. The count ſent me word not to alarm myſelf, for that thoſe who had conquered it had only borrowed it, to make a more effectual warfare on Barcelona.' The king replied, 'If you can prove this anſwer from the count de Foix, I will reſtore your caſtle.' 'That I can eaſily do,' anſwered the lady. She informed the count, who at that time reſided at Orthès, in Béarn, of this converſation, and entreated he would ſatisfy the king of Arragon. The count ſent letters to the king of Arragon by one of his knights, called ſir Cicart de Saurelin, to requeſt he would hold his couſin excuſed, and allow her to poſſeſs her lands in peace, otherwiſe it would diſpleaſe him. The king of Arragon acceded to this requeſt, and, having well entertained the knight, ſaid to him, 'The viſcounteſs has acted prudently, in thus having her couſin the count de Foix make excuſes for her.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

THOSE COMPANIONS WHO HAD CONQUERED DUREN ARE DEFEATED AND SLAIN, BY A STRATAGEM OF RAYMOND DE BACHEZ, COUSIN TO THE KING OF ARRAGON.

THUS affairs remained; the viſcounteſs de Caſtelbon had quiet poſſeſſion of her caſtle; but the merchants were not the leſs harraſſed by the garriſon who had come from Lourde. Thoſe of Barcelona and its neighbourhood were frequently pillaged and made priſoners by them, unleſs they had entered into a treaty and paid compoſition-money for their ſafety. Theſe compoſitions extended over many parts of Catalonia and Arragon; and the garriſon of Duren was deſirous of adopting the ſame plan, which they would have executed, or perhaps worſe, had they not been checked. They had done more miſchief to the country than thoſe of Lourde; for they were poorer, and made no diſtinction whom they attacked, whether officers of the king and queen or merchants. The king at length aſſembled his council on this buſineſs; for the great towns murmured, and ſaid, that the king, who ought to have deſtroyed ſuch wretches, ſupported them. Theſe and ſuch deſcription of ſpeeches, when told to the young king, gave him much uneaſineſs, and he was vexed that his ſubjects ſhould thus talk of him reſpecting Duren, becauſe the crown of his father, who had been

ſo

ſo greatly beloved, was but juſt fallen to him, He called to him a great baron of Arragon and his couſin, named ſir Raymond de Bachez, and ſaid, 'Sir Raymond, ride towards Durèn, and learn from thoſe who have ſurpriſed it what they want in my country, and make ſome treaty with them, that you may get them out of it by fair or foul means.' The knight obeyed, and ſent a herald to the garriſon of Duren, to ſay he wiſhed to negotiate a treaty with them. When Montfaucon and the other captains learnt that ſir Raymond de Bachez wanted to treat with them, they thought they ſhould obtain a large ſum to deliver up the place, and ſaid to the herald, 'Friend, tell your maſter, ſir Raymond, from us, that he may ſafely come here, for we will not do him any injury.'

The herald returned with this anſwer to ſir Raymond, at Perpignan, who inſtantly left the place, and on his arrival at Duren held a parley with them. He asked why they remained ſo long on the borders of Arragon: they replied, they were waiting to join the army from France that was coming to the ſupport of the king of Caſtille. 'Ha, my gentlemen,' ſaid ſir Raymond, 'if you wait for that, you will ſtay here too long; for the king of Arragon will not allow you thus to plunder his country and its inhabitants.'

They replied, 'that ſince the king would not ſuffer them to ſupport themſelves, he muſt prevent it, for live they would. If he would ranſom the country, they would march away, but not

not otherwiſe.' 'And what do you ask?' ſaid ſir Raymond. 'Sixty thouſand francs: we are four of us, and each muſt have fifteen thouſand for his ſhare.' 'In God's name,' ſaid ſir Raymond, 'that is money enough; but I will report it to the king: it is better for him to pay you this ſum, for the good of the country, than to allow your further pillaging.' He added this to keep them in good humour, but thought the contrary to what he had ſaid. On taking leave, ſir Raymond told them they might expect the ſum they had asked, and perhaps more. He then returned to Perpignan, where the king was, and related to him all that had paſſed. The king ſaid,—'You muſt at all events free the country from them, and pay the thieves; if I could get hold of them, I would hang them all, which is the only payment they deſerve: but the place is ſo ſtrong, it will be difficult to draw them out of it.'

'Sir,' replied ſir Raymond, 'I will manage it: only do not interfere.' 'Well,' ſaid the king, 'do ſo: I will not meddle further in the buſineſs; but ſee that the country be delivered from them.' Sir Raymond collected a body of men at arms, to the amount of five hundred ſpears, which he placed in ambuſh, and gave the command of them to a ſquire of Gaſcony called Naudon Scighin, who was valiant and expert in arms.

The ambuſcade was about a ſhort league from Duren, and ſir Raymond ordered, that as ſoon as the garriſon ſhould have paſſed by, they ſhould fall

fall on them, and, if poſſible, put all to death. Sir Raymond wrote to the garriſon, to deſire they would mount their horſes and advance to Perpignan, making a ſhow of attacking the place, to alarm the inhabitants, otherwiſe he ſhould never be able to raiſe their quota of the money he was to pay them. They were much pleaſed to receive ſuch intelligence, believing it true, and, mounting their horſes the ſame day the ambuſh was poſted, rode for Perpignan, galloping up to the barriers. When they had done this, they began their retreat, thinking to return quietly home; but they had ſcarcely gone half way before they met Naudon Seighin and his troops, who inſtantly charged them. They now perceived they had been tricked, and prepared to defend themſelves: they fought well during the time the combat laſted; but that was not long, for there were among them numbers of pillagers badly armed, who were ſoon defeated.

Among the ſlain were, Geoffry Chaſtelier, Hainge de Sorge, Guyot Moreſque, John le Geulant and many more. Peter de Montfaucon, Amblardan de St. Juſt and forty others, were made priſoners, and carried to Perpignan, where, as they paſſed the ſtreets, the inhabitants came out of their houſes and hooted at them, as they would have done at a wolf. Some were confined in yards, others in priſon or in pits.

The duke of Berry, about this time, arrived at Carcaſſone, from a viſit to pope Clement at Avignon. Having there heard that Duren was regained,

gained, and the garriſon ſlain or made priſoners, he inſtantly wrote to the king of Arragon, and to his couſin Jolante de Bar, to beg they would give up to him Peter de Montfaucon and his companions. His requeſt was immediately complied with, and they were ſent to the duke of Berry. They were indebted to him, or they would infallibly have all been put to death.

CHAP. XXI.

AN ACHIEVEMENT OF ARMS, PERFORMED BEFORE THE SENESCHAL OF BORDEAUX, BETWEEN A KNIGHT ATTACHED TO FRANCE AND ONE ATTACHED TO ENGLAND.

AT this period, there was an achievement of arms performed by two knights at Bordeaux, in the preſence of the ſénéſchal, ſir John Harpedon, and other noblemen. Theſe knights were the lord de la Rochefoucault, ſon to the ſiſter of the captal de Buch, and ſir William de Montferrant, attached to the Engliſh intereſt. As this tilt was to be made before all the lords and ladies of Bordeaux, the count de Foix ſent thither ſome knights of his houſehold to adviſe and direct the lord de la Rochefoucault, who was the ſon of his couſin, and likewiſe different ſorts of armour, daggers, battle-axes, and ſwords well

well tempered, although he had before properly provided himself with all things neceſſary.

Theſe knights armed themſelves on the appointed day, and were attended by a numerous body of chivalry. The lord de la Rochefoucault was accompanied by two hundred knights and ſquires, all connected with him by blood; and ſir William de Montferrant by as many, if not more. Among the number were, the lords de Rohan, de l'Eſparre, de Duras, de Mucident, de Landuras, de Curton, de Languran, de la Barde, de Tarbe, de Mont-croyat in Perigord, who had come from diſtant parts becauſe he was their relation, and to be ſpectators of the feats of arms of two ſuch valiant knights.

When they were mounted, and had their helmets laced on, their ſpears and ſhields were given them. They inſtantly ſtuck ſpurs into their horſes, and met each other full gallop, with ſuch force, that the laces of the helmets burſt aſunder; and their helmets were knocked off, ſo that they paſſed each other bare-headed, excepting the caps which were under the helmets. 'On my faith,' the ſpectators ſaid, 'they have gallantly performed their firſt courſe.' The knights now had their armour ſet to rights, and their helmets laced again, when they performed their ſecond and third courſes with equal ability. In ſhort, they behaved, in every attack, moſt gallantly, and to the ſatisfaction of all preſent. The ſénéſchal, ſir John Harpedon, entertained at ſupper, that evening, all the lords and ladies in Bordeaux;

and,

and, on the morrow, the company departed, and went to their different homes. The lord de la Rochefoucault made preparations for his journey to Caſtille; for king John had ſent to him, and the time was drawing nigh for him to ſet out. Sir William de Montferrant, when returned home, made alſo his preparations to croſs the ſea to Portugal; for that king had, in like manner, written to him.

CHAP. XXII.

SIR OLIVER DE CLISSON DELIVERS JOHN OF BLOIS, SON OF THE LATE LORD CHARLES OF BLOIS, FROM HIS LONG IMPRISONMENT IN ENGLAND; AND GIVES HIM HIS DAUGHTER IN MARRIAGE, TO THE GREAT DISPLEASURE OF THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

IN ſuch a grand and noble hiſtory as this, of which I, ſir John Froiſſart, am the author and continuator until this preſent moment, through the grace of God, and that perſeverance he has endowed me with, as well as in length of years, which have enabled me to witneſs abundance of the things that have paſſed, it is not right that I forget any thing. During the wars of Brittany, the two ſons of the lord Charles de Blois (who, for a long time, ſtiled himſelf duke of Brittany, in right of his lady, Jane of Brittany, who was deſcended

deſcended in a direct line from the dukes of Brittany, as has been mentioned in this hiſtory*) were ſent to England as hoſtages for their father, where they ſtill remain in priſon; for I have not as yet delivered them from it, nor from the power of the king of England, wherein the lord Charles had put them.

You have before ſeen† how king Edward of England, to ſtrengthen himſelf in his war with France, had formed an alliance with the earl of Montfort, whom he had aſſiſted, with advice and forces, to the utmoſt of his ability, inſomuch, that the earl had ſucceeded to his wiſhes, and was duke of Brittany. Had he not been thus ſupported, the lord Charles de Blois would have poſſeſſed ſeven parts of Brittany and the earl only five.

You have read how, in the year 1347, there was a grand battle before la Roche-derrien, between the forces of the counteſs of Montfort, and of ſir Thomas Hartwell and the lord Charles de Blois, in which the lord Charles was defeated, and carried priſoner to England. He was handſomely entertained there; for that noble queen of England, the good Philippa, (who, in my youth, was my lady and miſtreſs) was, in a direct line, his couſin-german. She did every thing in her power to obtain his freedom, which the council were not willing to grant. Duke Henry of Lancaſter, and the other barons of

* Vol. i. chap. 15. † In chap. 69, and the following, vol. i.

England,

England, declared, that he ought not to have his liberty; for he had too mighty connections, and that Philip, who called himſelf king of France, was his uncle: that, as long as they detained him priſoner, their war in Brittany would be the better for it. Notwithſtanding theſe remonſtrances, king Edward, through the perſuaſion of that noble and good lady, his queen, agreed to his ranſom; for two hundred thouſand nobles; and his two ſons were to be given as hoſtages for the payment of this ſum, which was very conſiderable to the lord Charles, but would not now be ſo, to a duke of Brittany. The lords of thoſe days were differently ſituated from what they are at preſent, when greater reſources are found, and they can tax their people at their pleaſure. It was not ſo then, for they were forced to content themſelves with the amount of their landed eſtates; but now, the duchy of Brittany would eaſily pay for the aid of its lord two hundred thouſand nobles within the year, or within two years at the fartheſt.

Thus were the two young ſons of the lord Charles de Blois given up as hoſtages for the payment of his ranſom. He had, afterward, in the proſecution of his war in Brittany, ſo much to pay his ſoldiers, and ſupport his rank and ſtate, that he could never, during his lifetime, redeem them. He was ſlain in the battle at Auray*, defending his right, by the Engliſh allies of the earl of Montfort, and by none others. His death,

* Vol. iii.

however,

however, did not put an end to the war; but, king Charles of France, ever fearing the effects of chance, when he ſaw the earl of Montfort was conquering all Brittany, ſuſpected, ſhould he wholly ſucceed, that he would hold the duchy independent of paying him homage for it; for he had already held it from the king of England, who had ſo ſtrenuouſly aſſiſted him in the war. He therefore negotiated with the earl, which, having been already mentioned*, I ſhall paſs over here: but the earl remained duke of Brittany, on condition that his homage ſhould be paid to his own right lord, the king of France. The duke was alſo bound, by the articles of the treaty, to aſſiſt in the deliverance of his two couſins, ſons of the lord Charles de Blois, who were priſoners to the king of England. In this, however, he never ſtirred; for he doubted, if they ſhould return, whether they would not give him ſome trouble, and whether Brittany, which was more inclined towards them than to him, would not acknowledge them as its lord.

For this reaſon he neglected them, and they remained ſo long priſoners in England, under the guard, at one time, of ſir Roger Beauchamp, a gallant and valiant knight, and his lady Sybilla, at another under ſir Thomas d'Ambreticourt, that the youngeſt brother, Guy of Brittany, died. John of Brittany was now alone priſoner,

* Vol. iii.

and frequently bewailed his ſituation with wonder; for he was ſprung from the nobleſt blood in the world, the advantages of which he had been long deprived of; for he had been thirty-five years in the power of his enemies, and, as he perceived no appearance of help coming to him from any quarter, he would rather have died than thus have exiſted. His relations and friends kept at a diſtance, and the ſum he was pledged for was ſo great, that he could never have procured it, without a miracle; for the duke of Anjou, in all his proſperity, though the perſon who had married his ſiſter-german, by whom he had two fine ſons, Lewis and Charles, never once thought of him.

I will now relate how John of Brittany obtained his liberty. You have before read of the earl of Buckingham's expedition, through France, to Brittany, whither the duke had ſent for him, becauſe the country would not acknowledge him for its lord. The earl and his army remained the enſuing winter, in great diſtreſs, before Nantes and Vannes, until the month of May, when he returned to England.

During the time the earl of Buckingham was at Vannes, you may remember, there were ſome tilts between knights and ſquires of France and thoſe of England, and that the conſtable of France was preſent. There was much converſation kept up by him and the Engliſh knights; for he was acquainted with them all, from his childhood, having been educated in England. He behaved very politely to many of them, as

men

men at arms uſually do, and the French and Engliſh in particular, to each other; but, at this moment, he was the more attentive, as he had an object in view, which occupied all his thoughts, and which he had only diſcloſed to a ſingle perſon, who was ſquire of honour in his houſehold, and had ſerved the lord Charles de Blois in the ſame capacity. If the conſtable had made it more public, he would not have ſucceeded as he did, through the mercy of God, and his own perſeverance.

The conſtable and duke of Brittany had for a long time hated each other, whatever outward appearances they might put on. The conſtable was much hurt at the length of the impriſonment of John of Brittany, and at a time when he was rather on better terms with the duke, ſaid to him,—'My lord, why do not you exert yourſelf to deliver your couſin from his impriſonment in England? You are bound to do ſo by treaty; for when the nobles of Brittany, the prelates and the principal towns, with the archbiſhop of Rheims, ſir John de Craon, and ſir Boucicaut, at that time marſhal of France, negotiated with you for peace before Quimper Corentin, you ſwore you would do your utmoſt to liberate your couſins John and Guy, and as yet you have never done any thing; know, therefore, that the country does not love you the more for it.' The duke diſſembled, and ſaid, 'Hold your tongue, ſir Oliver: where ſhall I find the three or four hundred thouſand francs which are demanded for their liberty?' 'My lord,' replied

plied the conſtable, 'if Brittany ſaw you were really in earneſt to procure their freedom, they would not murmur at any tax or hearth-money that ſhould be raiſed to deliver theſe priſoners, who will die in priſon unleſs God aſſiſt them.' 'Sir Oliver,' ſaid the duke, 'my country of Brittany ſhall never be oppreſſed by ſuch taxes. My couſins have great princes for their relations; and the king of France or duke of Anjou ought to aid them, for they have always ſupported them againſt me. When I ſwore, indeed, to aid them in their deliverance, it was always my intention that the king of France and their other relations ſhould find the money, and that I would join my entreaties.' The conſtable could never obtain more from the duke.

The conſtable, therefore, when at theſe tournaments at Vannes, ſaw clearly that the earl of Buckingham and the Engliſh barons and ſquires were greatly diſſatisfied with the duke of Brittany, for not having opened his towns to them, as he had promiſed, when they left England. The Engliſh near Hennebon and Vannes were in ſuch diſtreſs, that they frequently had not wherewithal to feed themſelves, and their horſes were dying through famine: they were forced to gather thiſtles, bruiſe them in a mortar, and make a paſte which they cooked. While they were thus ſuffering, they ſaid; 'this duke of Brittany does not acquit himſelf loyally of his promiſes to us, who have put him in poſſeſſion of his duchy; and, if we may be believed, we can as eaſily take it from him as we have given it

it to him, by ſetting at liberty his enemy, John of Brittany, whom the country love in preference. We cannot any way revenge ourſelves better, nor ſooner make him loſe the country.

The conſtable was well informed of all theſe murmurs and diſcontents, which were no way diſpleaſing to him: on the contrary, for one murmur he wiſhed there had been twelve; but he took no notice of it, and only ſpoke of what he had heard to this ſquire, whoſe name, I think was John Rolland.

It happened that ſir John Charlton, governor of Cherbourg, came to château Joſſelin, where the conſtable reſided, who entertained him and his company moſt ſplendidly; and to obtain their friendſhip, out of his ſpecial favour, eſcorted them himſelf until they were in ſafety. During the time of dinner, the before-mentioned ſquire addreſſed ſir John Charlton, ſaying, 'Sir John, you can, if you pleaſe, do me a very great favour, which will coſt you nothing.' 'From friendſhip to the conſtable,' replied ſir John, 'I wiſh it may coſt me ſomething: what is it you wiſh me to do?' 'Sir, replied he, 'that I may have your paſſport to go to England, to my maſter John of Brittany, whom I am more anxious to ſee than any thing in the world.' 'By my faith,' ſaid ſir John, 'it ſhall not be my fault if you do not. On my return to Cherbourg, I ſhall croſs over to England: come with me, therefore, and you ſhall accompany me, and I will have you conducted to him, for your requeſt cannot be refuſed.' 'A thouſand

thanks;

thanks; my lord, I ſhall ever remember your goodneſs.'

The ſquire returned, with ſir John Charlton, to Cherbourg; when, having arranged his affairs, he embarked, and made ſtraight for London, attended by John Rolland, whom he had conducted to the caſtle where John of Brittany was confined. John of Brittany did not, at firſt, recollect him; but he ſoon made himſelf known, and they had a long converſation, in which he told him, that if he would exert himſelf to procure his freedom, the conſtable would make the greateſt efforts to ſecond him. John of Brittany, deſiring nothing more eagerly, aſked, 'By what means?' 'I will tell you, my lord: the conſtable has a handſome daughter whom he wiſhes to marry, and if you will promiſe and ſwear, that on your return to Brittany you will marry her, he will obtain your liberty, as he has diſcovered the means of doing it.'

John of Brittany replied, 'he would truly do ſo;' adding, 'When you return to the conſtable, aſſure him from me, that there is nothing I am not ready to do for my liberty, and that I accept of his daughter and will cheerfully marry her.' They had ſeveral other converſations together before the ſquire left England and embarked for Brittany, where he related to the conſtable all that had paſſed.

The conſtable, eager to advance himſelf and marry his daughter ſo nobly, was not dilatory in ſearching out means to obtain his end. He conſidered to whom he ſhould addreſs himſelf in

England;

England; and, had he not made choice of the earl of Oxford, he would never have ſucceeded; but, notwithſtanding this nobleman had the complete government of the king, matters were not inſtantly brought about; for as long as the duke of Lancaſter remained in England, he never mentioned any thing concerning it to the king. The earl of Buckingham, on his return from Brittany, irritated the king and his brothers ſo much againſt the duke that it was publicly ſaid, the duke had acted treacherouſly towards him and his army; and they were ſo greatly angered, that John of Brittany was ſummoned before the king and council, when he was addreſſed as follows:—'John, if you be willing to hold the duchy of Brittany from the king of England, you ſhall have poſſeſſion of it, and be married in this country as nobly as the preſent duke has been;' (for the duke of Lancaſter was deſirous of giving him his daughter Philippa, who was afterwards queen of Portugal.) John of Brittany replied, 'that he would never conſent to ſuch a treaty, nor be an enemy to the crown of France: he would willingly accept of the daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, but he muſt firſt have his liberty.' On this, he was remanded to priſon.

When the earl of Oxford, who now bears the title of the duke of Ireland, found the duke of Lancaſter was landed in Caſtille, and all expectation of the connection with John of Brittany broken off by his carrying his daughter with him, he reſolved to ſolicit the king to give up to him

John

John of Brittany, as a remuneration for paſt ſervices, or for thoſe he might perform. If he ſucceeded, he could then treat with the conſtable of France, who had offered him, as the price of his ranſom, ſix ſcore thouſand francs to be made in two payments of ſixty thouſand each: the firſt to be paid at Boulogne on the arrival of John of Brittany in that town, and the ſecond in Paris, which was the place he had fixed on himſelf.

The duke of Ireland coveted the money, and was ſo preſſing with the king that he gave up John of Brittany abſolutely to his diſpoſal; which ſurpriſed all England, and cauſed much talking, but there it ended. The duke of Ireland had John of Brittany conducted to Boulogne, where he found equipages ready which the conſtable had cauſed to be prepared for him. He ſet out directly for Paris, where he was kindly received by the king and his other relations. The conſtable was there waiting for him, and carried him to Brittany, where he eſpouſed his daughter in conformity to their agreement.

When the duke of Brittany learnt that John of Brittany had obtained his liberty, and was returned to France, through the aid of the conſtable, he conceived a greater hatred againſt ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, and ſaid,—'Indeed! does ſir Oliver think to thruſt me out of my duchy? He ſhews ſome ſigns of it by ranſoming John of Brittany, and marrying him to his daughter. Such things are very diſpleaſing to me; and, by God, I will tell him ſo ſome day when he little thinks

thinks of it.' This, in truth, he did; for before the end of the year, he ſpoke to him very ſharply on this ſubject, as you will hear in the courſe of this hiſtory. But we muſt now ſay ſomething reſpecting the affairs of Caſtille and Portugal, and of an expedition which the Engliſh made againſt Sluys.

CHAP. XXIII.

FRANCE MAKES PREPARATIONS TO ASSIST KING JOHN OF CASTILLE.—THE DUKE OF BOURBON IS APPOINTED COMMANDER IN CHIEF OF THE FRENCH ARMY.

YOU have heard how the grand armament of the king of France at Sluys was broken up, not indeed through the will of the king, who was eager to the laſt to paſs over to England, and when he ſaw it could not be, was the moſt vexed of any. The whole blame was laid on the duke of Berry: perhaps he ſaw more clearly into this matter than others, and his advice of not attempting the invaſion of England was for the honour and advantage of France; for, before any thing of this ſort be undertaken, the end of it ſhould be conſidered; and the duke of Berry had

had remained ſo long in England as an hoſtage for king John, and had converſed ſo much with Engliſhmen, he probably foreſaw the event would be unfortunate: but the principal reaſon for putting it off was the ſeaſon of the year. It was, however, ſaid, that the conſtable in the courſe of the ſummer, ſhould lead thither ſix thouſand men at arms and as many croſs-bows, which he and the council thought would be fully ſufficient to combat the Engliſh. The conſtable was ſuppoſed to know this from his having been educated in England.

On the return of the lords to France, it was conſidered who ſhould be ſent to the aid of king John of Caſtille, againſt the king of Portugal and duke of Lancaſter: for it was clear there would be deeds of arms, as the Engliſh kept the field. None could be ſent thither without much coſt; for the diſtance was great, and there was not any money in the exchequer, nor in the hands of the receivers: the immenſe ſums which had been raiſed from the people were all diſſipated. Recourſe was, therefore, had to a tax that ſhould be inſtantly levied, and publiſhed as being for the aſſiſtance of the king of Caſtille, and the expulſion of the Engliſh from that country. This tax having been proclaimed, the king's commiſſioners came to the different towns, and ſaid to the principal inhabitants,—'Sirs, this city, or this town, is taxed at ſuch a ſum, which muſt be inſtantly paid.' 'Very well,' they replied, 'we will collect it, and ſend the whole amount to Paris.' 'That will not do,' ſaid

ſaid the commiſſioners: 'we cannot wait ſo long, and ſhall act more expeditiouſly.' On ſaying this, they ordered, in the king's name, which protected them from harm, ten or twelve of the richeſt inhabitants to priſon, unleſs they ſhould find the money. Theſe, being afraid of the king's diſpleaſure, ſoon brought the ſum required, which they afterwards collected from the townſmen. The taxes were ſo frequent, that one was ſcarcely paid, before another was called for.

Thus was the noble kingdom of France governed, and the poor oppreſſed; which cauſed numbers to ſell their houſes and lands, and retire to Hainault, or the biſhoprick of Liege, where no ſuch taxes exiſted.

The leaders of the troops deſtined to Caſtille were next thought of. The gallant duke of Bourbon was choſen commander in chief; but, before he left France, it was reſolved to appoint two other commanders, to attend to the men at arms, and inſtruct thoſe who had never been in Caſtille. The duke was to have two thouſand lances, of knights and ſquires, for his rear-ward, of as good men as could be found. The two knights appointed to lead the van, and to command the firſt diviſion, were ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac; and, on receiving their orders, they made every preparation ſuitable to their rank.

Knights and ſquires were ſummoned, throughout France, to go on this expedition: and all the paſſes into Caſtille were thrown open, as well

well, through Arragon as through Navarre. Many, therefore, came from all the different provinces of the kingdom, and took the road to Castille. Sir William de Lignac and sir Walter de Passac had the command of them, and set out in grand array.

CHAP. XXIV.

THE ENGLISH FLEET DEFEATS THAT OF SIR JOHN DE BUCQ, ADMIRAL OF FLANDERS FOR THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY.—THE ENGLISH, AFTER DOING MUCH MISCHIEF TO SLUYS, AND THAT PART OF THE COUNTRY, RETURN TO LONDON.

WHILE these knights and squires of France were making themselves ready to march for Castille, and each, as soon as prepared, set off, more especially from the distant parts, as the journey was long; the English fleet was at sea, between the coasts of England and Flanders. The earl of Arundel was admiral of it; but he had under him the earl of Devonshire, the earl of Nottingham and the bishop of Norwich, with five hundred men at arms and one thousand archers, and they were cruising about in search of their enemies.

They received supplies of provisions from the English coast, the islands of Cornwall, Brittany and Normandy; but were much vexed that the Flemish fleet had escaped into la Rochelle, and still

ſtill more, that the conſtable of France ſhould have paſſed Calais, from Treguier to Sluys, without their having met him. They were deſirous of engaging him, though he had as many veſſels as themſelves; but he ſailed through them in the night, with a favourable wind and tide.

The fleet, after this, anchored in Margate-roads, at the mouth of the Thames, to wait for the return of the Flemings from la Rochelle, which they knew would ſoon happen. The merchants from Flanders, Hainault and ſeveral other parts, who had ſailed in a body for fear of the Engliſh, having loaded their veſſels again with wines, ſet ſail from the port of la Rochelle, with a favourable wind, for Flanders and for Sluys, from whence they had come. They had paſſed the Ras-St.-Matthieu*, in Brittany, and coaſted the ſhores of Normandy and England, until they came to the mouth of the Thames, where the Engliſh fleet were lying at anchor. The Flemings deſcried their maſts; and thoſe aloft ſaid,—'Gentlemen, prepare yourſelves, for we ſhall meet the Engliſh fleet: they have ſeen us, and will take advantage of the wind and tide to give us battle before night.' This intelligence was not very agreeable to ſeveral of the merchants from Hainault and other countries, who having their goods on board, would have wiſhed to have ſheered off. However, as a combat was now un-

* Ras-St.-Matthieu, I ſuppose, muſt mean Ras-de-Blanquet, which is a narrow ſtrait of the sea between Alderney and Cape la Hogue.

avoidable,

avoidable, they made preparations for it; and they had, of croſs-bows and other armed men, upwards of ſeven hundred, under the command of a noble and valiant knight of Flanders, called ſir John de Bucq, who was admiral of the Flemiſh ſeas for the duke of Burgundy, and who had done much miſchief to the Engliſh at ſea.

Sir John de Bucq, having ably and prudently drawn up his veſſels, ſaid to their crews, —'My fair ſirs, do not be alarmed, for we are enow to combat the Engliſh, ſhould the wind be in our favour; but remember to make a running fight of it, and make for Sluys: if we can draw them on the Flemiſh coaſt, we ſhall have the beſt of the day.' Some were comforted by theſe words, others not; but they continued their preparations for battle, and the gunners made ready their bows and cannons.

The two fleets now approached each other. The Engliſh had ſome light galleys in which they had embarked archers; and theſe galleys advancing, by dint of oars, began the combat with a ſhower of arrows, which were loſt; for the Flemings ſheltered themſelves in their veſſels and were unhurt, while they ſailed on before the wind. Some of the croſs-bows, out of arrow ſhot, let fly bolts, which wounded many, and prevented thoſe in the galleys from being of any ſervice. The large ſhips, under lord Arundel, the biſhop of Norwich and others now advanced, and ran in among thoſe of Flanders, but they had not any advantage; for the croſs-bow-

men

men defended themſelves gallantly, as their commander, ſir John de Bucq, had adviſed them. He and his company were well armed, in a ship equal to any he might meet, and had their cannons on board, which ſhot balls of ſuch a weight that great miſchief was done. The Flemings, during the engagement, made as much ſail as they could for Flanders; indeed, ſome of the merchant-ships had already gained the coaſt, and had run into ſhoal water, where the large ſhips could not follow them for fear of the ſand-bank.

This battle was very long and obſtinate, for it continued three or four hours, and many of the veſſels were ſunk by the large bolts of iron, ſharply pointed, that were caſt down from the tops, and drove holes through them. When night came on, they ſeparated and caſt anchor, to repair their damages and take care of the wounded; but, on the return of the tide, they ſet their ſails and renewed the combat. Peter du Bois commanded a body of archers and ſailors, and gave the Flemings enough to do; for, having been a ſailor himſelf, he knew how to act, and was enraged at the Flemings, for having held out ſo long. The Engliſh continually gained on the Flemings, and, having got between them and Blanquenberg and Sluys, drove them to Cadſand, where the defeat was completed. They received no ſuccour, for at this time there were neither men at arms nor veſſels in Sluys fit for ſea.

Indeed, a ſquire of Sluys, called Arnold le Maire,

Maire, when he heard of the engagement, embarked on board a handſome ſloop of his own, taking with him ſome ſerjeants, and about twenty croſs-bows, and made ſail for the fleet; but it was towards the end of the defeat, for the Engliſh had taken the greater part of the enemy's ſhips, with their admiral, ſir John de Bucq, and all on board. Arnold le Maire, perceiving it was over, made his croſs-bows ſhoot thrice, and then made off: he was chaced as far as the harbour of Sluys, and there eſcaped, from the large veſſels being unable to follow him, through the ſhoals and low water.

The town of Sluys was thunderſtruck when it was known that their fleet from la Rochelle had been conquered by the English, and every moment expected to be attacked. The inhabitants knew not how to act, whether to fly or embark on board their laid-up veſſels, to wait the event and defend themſelves. Had the English ſuſpected the ſtate of Sluys, they might have been lords of that town and caſtle, or had they followed the advice of Peter du Bois, who ſtrongly recommended, when they were maſters of the fleet, to make for Sluys, which they would be ſure to gain. The English, however, thought they had done ſufficient; and ſome ſaid, 'We ſhall commit a great folly if we enter Sluys; for thoſe of Bruges, Damme and Ardembourg will ſhut us up in it, and we ſhall thus loſe all we have won. It is much better that we keep our prizes, and make war with prudence.'

The English, therefore, did not diſembark, but contented themſelves with attempting to burn the

veſſels

veſſels that were in the harbour. They ſelected the lighteſt veſſels from thoſe they had conquered, and filling and bedaubing them with pitch, oil, and other combuſtibles, let them float with the tide into the harbour of Sluys. Theſe veſſels burnt ſo clear and well, that the English hoped they would ſet fire to ſome large ships from Caſtille and other countries, indifferent to them which; but they did not the ſmalleſt damage to any. The English, by this victory, gained great wealth, eſpecially in wine, as they captured more than nine thouſand tons, which cauſed wine to be as dear in Flanders and Hainault all that year as it was of courſe cheap in England. Thus it happens, one man's gain is another's loſs. The English, however, did not ſail from Sluys, but remained at anchor, and from the galleys and barges, landed on the oppoſite ſide of the river to Sluys, at Tremue, which they burnt, with the monaſtery, and ſome other towns on the coaſt, whither they went along the ſea-shore, or on the dykes, called Tournehonque and Murdeques. They made many of the countrymen priſoners, and lay thus at anchor upwards of ten days; during which time they formed ſeveral ambuſcades between Damme and Sluys, and on the road to Coclear*. Sir John de Launay, a man at arms from Tournay, was there made a priſoner, who, in company with the lord d'Eſtrinay and ſir Blanquart de Coulonge, had ſet out full gal-

* Coclear, Q. Coxye.

lop, with forty lances, for Sluys, on hearing the English were on the coaſt.

It fortunately happened, that ſir Robert Marchand, who had married one of the late earl's baſtards, was at the time in Bruges: he inſtantly haſtened to Sluys, and flung himſelf into the caſtle, which he found weakly guarded, and unprovided. But if the English had landed, and entered Sluys with the ſame earneſtneſs they had done at Tremue on the other ſide of the river, they muſt have gained the caſtle; for ſo great was the alarm in the town that no one paid attention to any thing, nor thought of defending themſelves. Sir Robert Marchand encouraged them, by ſaying,—'You men of Sluys, what are you thinking of? It would ſeem from your appearance, that you are defeated without ſtriking a blow. Men of valour ought to ſhew a good countenance as long as poſſible; and, ſhould they be taken or ſlain in their own defence, they will have the grace of God and praiſe of the world.'

Thus did ſir Robert harangue thoſe of Sluys; notwithſtanding which, the whole country, as far as Bruges, was under the utmoſt alarm as long as the Engliſh remained on the coaſt; for they now daily diſembarked, and foraged far in the country. Not having horſes, they were always on foot: when their expeditions were ended, they ſlept on board, and on the morrow renewed their excurſions to the eaſt and weſt, without oppoſition. They burnt the town of Coxye, and another large village on the road from

from the coaſt to Ardembourg, called Hoſebourg: they would have done more if they had known the ſtate of the country. After ſtaying as long as they pleaſed, and finding no attempt made to regain what they had won on ſea and land, they ſet ſail with a favourable wind for England, carrying with them more than two hundred thouſand francs of wealth. Having entered the Thames, they landed at London, where they were joyfully received for the fine wines of Poitou and Saintonge they had on board, which were intended to have been drank in Flanders, Brabant, Hainault, Liege and other places. They were diſperſed throughout England, and the prices ſo much depreſſed from the quantity, a gallon was ſold for fourpence. The Engliſh, who reſided on the frontiers of Flanders, Holland and Zealand were too enterpriſing in their voyages to Dordrecht, Zuric-zee, Middlebourg, and the Brielle in Holland. Some of the merchants of Zuric-zee had, on board the fleet that was captured, much wine from la Rochelle, which was reſtored to them. The Engliſh were right in thus courteouſly treating them; for Zuric-zee would never join the French in their invaſion of England, nor permit them to have any veſſels or boats from thence, and this conduct acquired them the love of the Engliſh.

Sir John de Bucq was a priſoner at London, on his word: he was permitted to go any where about the town, but at ſun-ſet he was to return to his lodging; nor would the Engliſh ever liſten

to any ranſom for him, though the duke of Burgundy would willingly have given in exchange a baſtard brother of the king of Portugal, who had been taken at ſea in coming from Middlebourg: had he been within the limits of Zealand, he would have eſcaped. I believe ſir John de Bucq remained a priſoner in London for three years, and there died.

CHAP. XXV.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL SENDS AMBASSADORS TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER TO CONCLUDE HIS MARRIAGE WITH THE LADY PHILIPPA.—SIR BARROIS DES BARRES IS ORDERED BY THE KING OF CASTILLE TO THE CASTLE OF NOYA*.

IT is time for us now to return to the affairs of Caſtille and Portugal, and to ſpeak of the duke of Lancaſter, as to the proſperity of his undertakings, for his concerns were not trifling; and likewiſe to mention the aid France ſent king John of Caſtille, for otherwiſe his fortunes would have made a ſmall figure: he would have loſt this year his whole kingdom, if it had not been for the friendſhip of the king of France. Intelligence is ſoon ſpread abroad, and the king of Portugal was as quickly informed of what was doing in France, relative to the great armament that was to invade England, by his

* Noya is an ancient town in Galicia, five or six leagues to the weſtward of Sant Jago.

merchants

merchants on their return home, as the duke of Lancaſter; for the king reſided, at that ſeaſon, at Oporto; which is one of the largeſt cities and the moſt frequented port of his realm. He was rejoiced to hear it was at an end, for he had been told England would be ruined; and this had made him heſitate as to the concluſion of his marriage, amuſing the duke and ducheſs with fine words and compliments.

When he learnt for certain, that the king of France and his nobles were returned home, he ſummoned his council, and ſaid,—'My fair ſirs, you know that the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter are in Galicia: you alſo know, a great affection ſubſiſts between us, and that we have had ſeveral conferences; in one of which it has been propoſed by our councils, that I ſhould take the lady Philippa to wife. I mean to perſevere in this buſineſs, and to make an honourable demand of her, as is becoming two ſuch princes as the duke of Lancaſter and myſelf; for I will have her for my queen.' 'Sir,' replied thoſe to whom he addreſſed himſelf, 'you are in the right, for ſo you have ſolemnly promiſed and ſworn.' 'Now, whom ſhall we ſend to conduct the lady hither?' The archbiſhop of Braganza and ſir John Radighes de Sar were named; and as they were not preſent, they were ſent for, and informed how they were to act. They undertook the buſineſs with pleaſure, and were eſcorted going and returning by two hundred ſpears.

We will now ſpeak of ſir Thomas Moreaux's

ſiege

ſiége of Ribadavia, and relate what happened there. I believe the inhabitants expected ſuccours from the king of Caſtille and the French knights at Validolid, otherwiſe they would not have held out; and I know not how ſuch peaſants, who had none but themſelves to adviſe with, could ſo vigorouſly have oppoſed the flower of the Engliſh army, and how it happened that they were not frightened, for every day there were ſkirmiſhes and aſſaults. The braveſt captains of the army ſaid to ſir Thomas, —'Let us leave this town, and may lightning deſtroy it, and advance further into the country, towards Mamez*, Noya, or Beſances†: we can at any time return hither.' 'By my faith,' replied ſir Thomas, 'ſuch peaſants ſhall never have it to ſay they have defeated me, were I to remain here theſe two months, unleſs the duke ſhall otherwiſe order.' The marſhal was thus obſtinate in continuing the ſiege.

King John received frequent intelligence, at Valiſolid, how the men of Ribadavia were defending themſelves valiantly, and would not ſurrender. In God's name, ſaid Barrois des Barres, 'I am much vexed I had not ſent thither ſome Frenchmen, who would have greatly encouraged the inhabitants, and ſtill more that I did not go myſelf, for I ſhould then have acquired all the honour which theſe peaſants will now have; and, if they had really told me it

---

* Mamez. Q. Muros. † Besances. Q. Betanços, or Entança.

was

was a town of ſuch ſtrength, and that it required ſuch a garriſon, I would, without doubt, have reinforced it, and have perſonally riſked the command; and God would have given me grace to guard and defend it, as he has done to theſe peaſants.'

Such were the converſations that frequently paſſed between the king of Caſtille and the French knights, who were eager to be employed. They ſaid to the king,—'It will be right, ſir, that you ſend one hundred ſpears to the caſtles of Noya and Corunna, and they will defend thoſe parts of Galicia ſituated between theſe two caſtles.' 'And whom can we ſend thither?' Several knights inſtantly offered their ſervices, ſuch as ſir Triſtan de Roye, ſir Reginald and ſir Lambert de Braquemont, ſir Triſtan de la Jaille, ſir John de Châtelmorant and ſir Barrois des Barres, whom the king heard with pleaſure, and ſaid; 'My fair ſirs, I give you many thanks for your willingneſs; but you cannot all go: ſome muſt remain with me in caſe of accidents: and, for the preſent, I ſhall entreat ſir Barrois des Barres, if he pleaſe to undertake this buſineſs.' The Barrois was much delighted on hearing this, for he had too long remained idle, and replied,—'Sir king, I thank you: I will defend them to the utmoſt of my power; and, when I am once within them, I will never depart without your ſpecial order.' 'By God,' ſaid the king, 'I believe we ſhall ſoon have news from France.' The knights were ignorant of the decampment from Sluys,

though

though the king knew it; for the duke of Bourbon had written to him the whole account, and what was going forward in France; how he was to come to Caſtille with three thouſand ſpears; but that ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac were firſt to clear the paſſes, with an equal number of lances. He aſked the knights if they wiſhed to hear news. 'Ah, ſire, tell us ſome from France, for we are very anxious to hear from thence.' 'Willingly, replied the king. He then told them, that the duke of Bourbon was appointed by the king of France and his council, commander in chief of all the forces ſent to Caſtille; which amounted to ſix thouſand ſpears; that ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac were to lead the van, of three thouſand knights and ſquires, and were then on their march; that the invaſion of England was deferred until May, when the conſtable of France, the count de St. Pol and the lord de Coucy, ſhould there land, with four thouſand lances. 'What do you ſay to this?' asked the king. 'What do we ſay, ſire,' replied the knights, who were rejoiced: 'we ſay that it is delightful news, and we cannot have better; and, in the courſe of the ſummer, many gallant deeds will be done in your country; for, if they have ordered ſix thouſand, nine thouſand will come. We ſhall certainly combat the Engliſh, who now keep the field; and, before St. John's day, we will ſhut them up.'

'On my faith, ſaid each of the knights, 'the three you have named are gallant men, eſpecially

ally the duke of Bourbon: and the other two are well qualified to command men at arms.'

The news of this army coming from France was ſoon known in Validolid, and throughout Caſtille; and that it had been ordered to arrive by the firſt of May, to the great comfort of all, and joy of the knights and ſquires.

CHAP. XXVI.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER SENDS A REINFORCEMENT TO THE SIEGE OF RIBADAVIA.—ON THAT TOWN BEING TAKEN BY STORM, MAURES* INSTANTLY SURRENDERS.

SIR Barrois des Barres left the king of Caſtille in Validolid, and accompanied by only fifty ſpears, rode towards the town of Noya. News was brought to ſir Thomas Morcaux's army, but I know not by whom, that the French were on their march, to the amount of five hundred lances, to raiſe the ſiege of Ribadavia. Sir Thomas too eaſily believed this intelligence; for thoſe who had told it affirmed it for truth, and that they had ſeen them on their march, on this ſide the river Duero, and encamped at Villalpando. The marſhal was adviſed to let the duke of Lancaſter have infor-

* Maures. Q. Muros.

mation

mation of this, which he did, by ſending to him ſir John d'Ambreticourt, and a herald well acquainted with the roads in Galicia. He himſelf was always on his guard, leſt he ſhould be ſurpriſed in the night, and one half of his army was on duty, while the other half ſlept. When the arrival of ſir John and the herald at Sant Jago, where the duke and ducheſs reſided, was known, the duke ſaid they have brought ſome intelligence, and, ſending for them, asked the news. 'Good news, my lord: the marſhal ſends me hither to know how you would wiſh him to act; for he has learnt for certain, that the French have aſſembled a ſtrong body in Caſtille, and are on their march to croſs the river, and engage with our men before Ribadavia. This is the news I have brought.' 'In God's name,' replied he, 'it is news enough, but we will ſoon provide a remedy.' He looked at ſir John Holland and ſir Thomas Percy, his conſtable and admiral, and ſaid to them; 'Take three hundred ſpears and five hundred archers, and join our companions before Ribadavia, who are looking for the French coming to attack them.' They replied, they would cheerfully obey, and, making themſelves ready, ſet out with the above mentioned force, and arrived before Ribadavia, to the great joy of their countrymen.

Sir John Holland ſaid to the marſhal,—'What do theſe fellows of Ribadavia mean? will they not ſurrender?' 'No, by my faith,' replied ſir Thomas, 'they are ſo preſumptuous: notwithſtanding

ing they have ſeen all the neighbouring towns do ſo, they obſtinately follow their own inclinations. They are but peaſants; for not one gentleman is in the town.' 'Say no more,' anſwered ſir John: 'before four days we will put them in ſuch plight, that they will gladly ſurrender to any who will ſhew them mercy; but tell the admiral and me, are the French abroad?' 'I was ſo informed,' ſaid ſir Thomas; 'and was aſſured there were upwards of five hundred in one body. This is very probable; for men at arms are continually coming from France to Caſtille. I afterwards heard, that only ſir Barrois des Barres had entered the caſtle of Noya with fifty lances, and I know nothing more of them.'

The converſation now ceaſed; and the new comers were lodged among them as well as circumſtances would admit, and were well ſerved from the proviſion which had followed them. Four days after the arrival of ſir John Holland and ſir Thomas Percy, great preparations were made for a general aſſault; and a large machine of timber was built, and mounted on wheels, which could be puſhed any where. It would contain, with eaſe, one hundred men at arms, and the ſame number of archers; but, for this attack, it was filled with archers only, and the ditches were levelled where it was intended to paſs.

When the attack commenced, this machine was wheeled up to the walls by main force; and the archers, being well provided with arrows, ſhot

ſhot vigorouſly on their enemies, who returned it by throwing darts and ſuch other miſſile weapons, as was wonderful to behold. The roof of this machine was covered with ſtrong ox-hides to ſhelter them from the effects of the ſtones and the darts: underneath were men at arms well ſhielded, that with pick-axes worked hard, and with ſucceſs againſt the walls; for the townſmen could not prevent them for fear of the archers, who gave them full employment. At length, a large breach was made in the wall, and a conſiderable part thrown into the ditch; which when the Galicians perceived, they were ſo diſmayed, that they cried loudly, 'We ſurrender, we ſurrender!' No one made any anſwer; but the Engliſh laughed at them, and ſaid, 'Theſe peaſants have done us much miſchief, and mock us by now offering to ſurrender, for the town is ours.' Some of the Engliſh replied, 'If you wiſh to ſay any thing to us, it muſt be in good French or Engliſh, for we do not underſtand Caſtillian,' and kept advancing and ſlaying thoſe who were flying before them. They killed them in heaps; and that day there were fifteen hundred put to death, including Jews, many of whom were reſident in the town. Thus was Ribadavia taken by ſtorm: thoſe who firſt entered it gained great pillage, eſpecially from the houſes of the Jews, wherein they found more wealth in money than elſewhere. After the town had been plundered, the marſhal was asked what he intended doing with it, and if they ſhould ſet it on fire. 'Oh no,'

no,' replied he: 'we will keep it, and make it as ſtrong as any town in Galicia.'

After they had conſulted whither to go next, they determined to march to Muros, another tolerably good town in Galicia. The garriſon of Ribadavia, conſiſting of twenty ſpears and ſixty archers, was put under the command of ſir Peter Clinton, a valiant knight and expert man at arms. The army carried away much proviſion from the town, which was well ſtored, particularly in pork and wines: theſe laſt were ſo ſtrong and fiery, they could ſcarcely drink them; and, when any of the Engliſh drank too much, they were diſabled for two days. On their departure from Ribadavia, they took the road towards Muros, and had their large machine taken to pieces and brought after them, for they found it had cauſed great alarm to many other towns.

When the inhabitants of Muros heard that the Engliſh were on their march to attack them, that Ribadavia had been ſtormed and numbers put to death, and that they had with them a devil of a machine, ſo great and wonderful it could not be deſtroyed, they were much frightened thereat, and were apprehenſive what the Engliſh might do to them. They held a council, whether they ſhould defend the town or not, and thought it would be more for their advantage to ſurrender; for, ſhould the town be ſtormed, they would loſe their lives and fortunes, and they ſaw no hopes of aid from any quarter.

'Conſider,'

'Conſider,' ſaid ſome of the moſt prudent, 'what has been the conſequence of the defence of Ribadavia, which was much ſtronger than our town: they held out for near a month, but no reinforcements were ſent them. The king of Caſtille, as we underſtand, looks on all Galicia, as far as the river Duero, as loſt, and you will never, this year, ſee any of the French enter it. Let us, therefore, handſomely ſurrender, without making any oppoſition, in the like manner the other towns of Caſtille have done.' 'It is well ſaid,' the hearers replied, and they unanimouſly agreed to adopt this opinion. 'But how ſhall we manage it?' ſaid ſome of them. 'In God's name,' replied thoſe who propoſed the ſurrender, 'we will go out to meet the Engliſh, and preſent them the keys of our town; for they are a civil people, and will not hurt us: if we receive them kindly, we ſhall have their thanks.'

Having determined on this plan, fifty of the principal inhabitants went out of the town as ſoon as they heard the Engliſh were approaching, and waited on the road, about a quarter of a league off. News was brought to the Engliſh army, that thoſe of Muros had come out of their town, not in hoſtile array, but with the intention of ſurrendering and offering the keys of the place, which they had brought with them. Some of the lords rode forward to know the truth of it, but ordered the army to halt until their return. As they were advancing, the townſmen were told, 'Here come three of the

the principal lords of England, ſent by the duke of Lancaſter to conquer the country: ſpeak to them.' On which, they caſt themſelves on their knees, and ſaid; 'My lords, behold the poor inhabitants of Muros, who are deſirous to put themſelves under the obedience of the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter: we therefore entreat you to receive us in your favour, for all we have is yours.'

The three lords, having conſulted together, replied,—'Good people, we will return with you to your town, and enter it with part of our army, but not all, and there you ſhall take ſuch oaths as good ſubjects ought to their lord or lady.' They anſwered, they would cheerfully do ſo. 'Now, then,' ſaid the lords, 'go back, and open your gates, for your ſurrender is accepted.' They flung open the gates and barriers for the conſtable and other lords, who might amount to four hundred lances, but not more: the reſt remained without the walls, but had much proviſion from the town, wherein the leaders were lodged, and where they made the townſmen take the uſual oaths of obedience.

CHAP. XXVII.

THE LADY PHILIPPA OF LANCASTER IS MARRIED, BY PROCURATION, TO THE KING OF PORTUGAL.—THE CEREMONY IS AGAIN PERFORMED WITH GREAT MAGNIFICENCE AND FEASTINGS AT OPORTO.

ON the morrow, after the ſurrender of Muros, when the knights were preparing for their march towards Betanços, a meſſenger from the duke of Lancaſter arrived with letters, ordering them to return inſtantly, whatever might be their ſituation; for he was daily expecting the archbiſhop of Braganza and ſir John Radighes de Sar, ambaſſadors from the king of Portugal, who were to marry his daughter by procuration, and conduct her to that king at Oporto, where he was waiting for her.

Sir John Holland, the marſhal and admiral, on learning this, altered their plans, and ſaid it was proper that their lord the duke, when he received ambaſſadors from the king of Portugal, ſhould have all his council with him. Having placed ſufficient garriſons in the towns they had won, they ſaid they would not attempt more until the month of May, and returned to Sant Jago, whither the duke had ſent for them.

Three

Three days after their arrival, came the archbiſhop of Braganza and ſir John Radighes de Sar, who entered the town of Sant Jago with two hundred horſe, where they were all lodged, every thing having been prepared for them.

When the archbiſhop, with the knights and lords in his company, had refreſhed themſelves, they waited on the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter in grand array, who received them moſt graciouſly. They then declared the motive of the embaſſy, which the duke heard with pleaſure; for he was rejoiced at the exaltation of his daughter, and the connection with the king of Portugal, which was very opportune, if he perſevered in his intention of conquering Caſtille. The archbiſhop explained, to the ſatisfaction of the duke and his council, that by power of the king's procuration, he was authoriſed to eſpouſe perſonally the lady Philippa of Lancaſter, in the name of don John king of Portugal. During the reſidence of theſe ambaſſadors at Sant Jago, the ceremony was performed by virtue of the abovementioned procuration; and the archbiſhop of Braganza and the lady Philippa were courteouſly laid beſide each other, on a bed, as married perſons ſhould be. This being done, on the morrow the lady and her attendants were ready to depart; and, having bidden adieu to her father and mother, ſhe mounted her palfrey, as did her damſels, and her baſtard ſiſter, the wife of the marſhal, who accompanied her to Portugal. Sir John Holland, ſir Thomas Percy and ſir John d'Ambreticourt were ordered to eſcort her, with

one hundred ſpears and two hundred archers. They followed the road to Oporto, and, when near, were met by the king and his court, with all the prelates at that time in Oporto, to do her honour; ſuch as the biſhops of Liſbon, Evora, Coimbra and Oporto: among the barons were, the counts d'Angouſe, de Novaire, de l'Eſcalle, Galopès Fernando Portelet, Vaſco Martin de Merlo, with upwards of forty knights, and great crowds of ladies and other perſons, and the whole of the clergy in their holiday dreſſes. Thus was the lady Philippa conducted to the king's palace at Oporto, where ſhe diſmounted. The king took her by the hand and kiſſed her, performing the ſame ceremony to all the ladies who had accompanied her, and then led her to her apartments, where he took leave of her and her companions.

The Engliſh lords and their men were lodged in the town, which is of conſiderable ſize; and this night they kept the vigil of the feaſt by carolling, dancing and other amuſements, until the morrow's dawn. On Tueſday morning, the king of Portugal, the prelates and lords of his country were dreſſed by eight o'clock, and, mounting their horſes at the palace gate, rode to the cathedral called St. Mary's church, where they waited for the queen. She followed ſhortly after, attended by her ladies and damſels; and, though the ambaſſadors had before eſpouſed her in the king's name, the ceremony was again performed; which done, they returned to the palace, where were grand and ſolemn feaſtings. In the afternoon

noon were tilts and tournaments before the king and queen; and in the evening the prizes were diſtributed. Sir John Holland gained the one deſtined for ſtrangers; and that for the natives was won by a knight attached to the king, ſir John Teſta-d'oro. The day and night paſſed thus jovially in various amuſements. That night the king lay with the queen; and it was reported by thoſe who were near his perſon, that he had hitherto been perfectly chaſte, and had never known woman.

On the morrow the feaſtings and jouſtings were renewed, when ſir Vaſco Martin de Merlo gained one prize, and ſir John d'Ambreticourt the other. The night was ſpent, as before, in carollings, dancing and other ſports; and while the Engliſh ſtaid at Oporto, there were tournaments every day.

With ſuch rejoicings was the queen of Portugal received on her arrival at Oporto. They laſted upwards of ten days; and the king made all the ſtrangers, on their departure, ſuch gifts as ſatisfied them. The Engliſh lords, having taken leave of the king and queen of Portugal, returned to Sant Jago. The duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter made great inquiries, and were told all that had paſſed; that the king ſaluted them, and that the queen recommended herſelf to their love. Sir John Holland and ſir Thomas Percy added,—'My lord, the laſt words the king ſaid to us were, that you might take the field when you pleaſed, for that he would join you and enter Caſtille.' 'That is good news, indeed,' replied the duke.

About fifteen days after the return of the lords from Portugal, the duke of Lancaſter ordered them to prepare for conquering the remaining towns in Galicia, for there were ſeveral he was not maſter of. It was ſettled by the council of the duke, that when he ſhould depart from Sant Jago, the ducheſs and her daughter Catherine ſhould viſit the king and young queen of Portugal, at Oporto. The town of Sant Jago was placed under the command of an Engliſh knight, called ſir Lewis Clifford, with thirty ſpears, and one hundred archers, for his garriſon.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER MARCHES HIS ARMY TO ENTENÇA.—THE INHABITANTS SEND, WITH THE CONSENT OF THE DUKE, TO THE KING OF CASTILLE FOR SUCCOUR.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter marched from Sant Jago, he left no more in garriſon than thoſe already mentioned. He rode on, in company with his ducheſs, towards the city of Entença, which is a good town in one of the extremities of Galicia, and the laſt on the borders of Portugal, in the direct road from Sant Jago to Oporto and Coimbra. They had taken this line of march, becauſe the ducheſs and her daughter were to viſit Portugal.

The inhabitants of Entença, hearing that the duke

duke and his army were advancing againſt them, held a council to conſider what conduct they ſhould purſue. After many debates, it was at length agreed that they ſhould ſend ſix of their principal men to the duke and ducheſs, to entreat they might not be attacked for eight days only, when they would let the king of Caſtille know their ſituation, and if he ſent them no aid they would ſurrender unconditionally. The ſix citizens, on leaving the town, took the road the Engliſh were coming, and firſt met the van-guard under the command of the marſhal, by whom they were inſtantly arreſted. They ſaid, they were deputed by the inhabitants of Entença to parley with the duke. Upon which the marſhal ſaid to Sir John Sounder, who was by his ſide; 'Conduct theſe men to my lord; for it will be neceſſary to eſcort them, or they may be ſlain by our archers.' The knight replied, he would take care of them; and then the marſhal ſaid, 'Go, go, this knight will conduct you.' They all departed, and rode together until they came up with the duke and ducheſs, who had diſmounted, and were ſitting under ſome fine olive trees, attended by ſir John Holland, ſir Thomas Percy and others. On ſeeing ſir John Sounder approach, they eyed him well; and ſir John Holland ſaid,—'Fair brother, Sounder, are theſe priſoners thine?' 'They are not priſoners, ſir, but men from Entença whom the marſhal has ordered me to conduct to my lord; and from what I can learn, they wiſh to treat with him.' The duke and ducheſs heard all this; and ſir

John'

John Sounder continued, 'Come forward, my good people: you ſee your lord and lady.'

Upon this the ſix men advanced, and, caſting themſelves on their knees, thus ſpoke,—'Our moſt redoubted lord and lady, the commonalty of the town of Entença, hearing you were marching your army againſt them, have ſent us hither to entreat you would delay advancing further for eight or nine days only, in which time they will ſend to the king of Caſtille, in Validolid, an account of the great peril they are in; and if, during thoſe nine days, they be not reinforced ſufficiently to offer you combat, they will put themſelves fully under your obedience. In the mean time, ſhould you or your army be in want of proviſion or ſtores, thoſe of the town will cheerfully ſerve you with both for your money.'

The duke made no reply, leaving it to the ducheſs, as ſhe was from that country. She looked at the duke, and ſaid, 'Well, my lord, what do you ſay?' 'Lady what do you ſay? you are the heireſs of this country, and, as the inheritance comes through you, you muſt reply.' 'It will be right then, my lord, that their offer be accepted; for I do not believe that the king of Caſtille has any deſire to combat you ſo ſoon.' 'I do not know that,' anſwered the duke: 'God grant it may happen otherwiſe: we ſhall the ſooner put an end to the buſineſs; and I wiſh it were to take place within ſix days; but, ſince you are deſirous their offer be accepted, I conſent.'

The ducheſs then addreſſed the deputies, ſaying,—'You may return, for your offer is accepted;

cepted; but you muſt deliver up to the marſhal twelve of your principal citizens, as pledges for the due performance of the treaty.' They replied they would do ſo, and, riſing up, were given to the care of ſir John Sounder, who conducted them back to the marſhal, and told him what had paſſed, which gave him ſatisfaction. The deputies returned to their town and related the ſucceſs of their miſſion. Twelve of the principal inhabitants were ſent to the marſhal, and the place was unmoleſted, on the terms mentioned. In another council they reſolved to ſend the ſame ſix men, and no others, to inform the king of Caſtille of their ſituation. They rode to Validolid, where the king reſided, with part of his council, and, their arrival being notified to him, he was eager to ſee them, to learn the news and talk with them; for he was ignorant of the treaty they had entered into, and that the Engliſh were before Entença.

CHAP

CHAP. XXIX.

THE DUCHESS OF LANCASTER AND HER DAUGHTER VISIT THE KING AND QUEEN OF PORTUGAL.—THE INHABITANTS OF ENTENÇA, RECEIVING NEITHER ANSWER NOR SUCCOUR FROM THE KING OF CASTILLE, SURRENDER TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, ACCORDING TO THE TERMS OF THEIR TREATY.

WHILE theſe ſix deputies were journeying towards Validolid, the duke of Lancaſter gave directions for the departure of his ducheſs and daughter, the lady Catharine, to viſit the king and queen of Portugal. On their ſetting out, the duke ſaid,—'Conſtance, you will ſalute from me the king my ſon, my daughter, and the barons of Portugal, and give them all the intelligence you can; how Entença has entered into a treaty with me; but that I doubt if John de Tranſtamare, your adverſary, will allow them to keep it, or whether he will offer me battle; for well I know that great reinforcements are to come to him from France, and thoſe who are eager for renown will haſten to Caſtille as ſpeedily as poſſible. It will be neceſſary for me to be daily on my guard, in expectation of an engagement, which you will tell the king and his barons; and that, if I ſhall learn any thing for certain of a combat being likely to take place, I will inſtantly

ſtantly ſignify it to the king of Portugal. Deſire him from me, to be well prepared to come to our aſſiſtance, in the defence of our right, as he has ſolemnly ſworn to do in the treaties concluded between us. You will return to me; but leave our daughter Catharine with her ſiſter, the queen of Portugal, for ſhe cannot be better placed, nor more in ſafety.' 'My lord,' replied the ducheſs, 'all this I will cheerfully perform.'

The ducheſs, her daughter, and the ladies and damſels who accompanied them, took their leave and departed. They were eſcorted to Oporto by the admiral, ſir Thomas Percy, ſir Evan Fitzwarren, the lord Talbot, ſir John d'Ambreticourt and ſir Maubrun de Linieres, with one hundred ſpears and two hundred archers. The king of Portugal, hearing the ducheſs of Lancaſter and her daughter were on the road, was much pleaſed, and ſent ſome of his principal courtiers to meet them, ſuch as the counts d'Angouſes, de Novaire, ſir John Radighes de Sar, ſir John Fernando Portelet, ſir Vaſco Martin de Merlo, ſir Egeas Colle, and twenty other knights. They rode two long leagues before they met the ladies, who received them graciouſly and gaily. The ducheſs politely made acquaintance with the different knights, and, as they rode together, ſhe converſed with much affability among them all. Thus did they arrive at Oporto, when the ducheſs and her ladies were conducted to the palace. The king was the firſt who waited on them, and kiſſed them all round; then came the queen, attended by her ladies, and received her lady-mother and ſiſter

moſt

moſt kindly and honourably. The whole palace was rejoiced at the arrival of theſe ladies; but I will not pretend to ſpeak very particularly of what paſſed, for I was not there: all I know was from that gallant knight, ſir John Fernando Portelet, who was preſent.

The ducheſs took a proper opportunity to deliver the duke's meſſage to the king of Portugal, who replied with prudence and friendſhip,—'Lady and couſin, I am prepared, ſhould the king of Caſtille take the field, with three thouſand lances, who are ſtationed on the borders of Caſtille, whom I can collect in three days, and I ſhall alſo bring with me full twenty thouſand men from the commonalty of the country, who are not to be deſpiſed, for they were of the greateſt ſervice to me at the battle of Aljubarota.' 'Sir,' ſaid the ducheſs, 'you ſay well, and I am greatly thankful to you; and if my lord gain any further intelligence, he will inſtantly let you know.' Such was the converſation that paſſed between the king of Portugal and the ducheſs of Lancaſter.

We will now return to Entença, and ſay what ſucceſs their deputies had at Validolid. On their being introduced to the king of Caſtille, they caſt themſelves on their knees, and ſaid,—'Moſt redoubted lord, if you will condeſcend to liſten to us, we have been ſent hither by your town of Entença, which has been forced to enter into a treaty with the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter. The terms of which are, that the Engliſh will abſtain from any attack for nine days; and if, within

within that time, you ſhall come in ſufficient force to offer them combat and reſiſt the duke, the town will remain yours: but, if not, the town has given up hoſtages to ſurrender it to them. You will be pleaſed, moſt redoubted lord, to ſay what you will do.' The king replied, that 'he would adviſe upon it, and they ſhould have an anſwer.' He then left them, and retired to his chamber. I am ignorant if he ſummoned his council or not, or how the matter was managed; but theſe ſix men were there for eight days without obtaining any anſwer, nor did they again ſee the king.

The day came for the ſurrender of the town before any of the deputies returned. The duke, therefore, ſent his marſhal to Entença, on the tenth day, to ſay, that if the town were not ſurrendered, according to the terms of the treaty, he would inſtantly cut off the heads of the hoſtages. The marſhal, on arriving at the barriers, whither he ſummoned the inhabitants, thus addreſſed them,—'My good people, the duke of Lancaſter ſends me to know why you have not brought him the keys of the town, and put yourſelves under his obedience, as you were in duty bound? The nine days expired, as you know, yeſterday. If you do not inſtantly comply, he will order the heads of the hoſtages to be ſtruck off, and then march hither to ſtorm the town, when you will all be ſlain, without mercy, like to thoſe of Ribadavia.'

The men of Entença, hearing this, were much afraid, not only for themſelves, but alſo for their friends

friends who were pledged for the obſervance of the treaty, and replied,—'In good truth, my lord marſhal, the duke has reaſon for ſaying what you tell us; but we know not what is become of the deputies we ſent to the king of Caſtille, nor what can have kept them at Validolid.' 'Sirs, they may perhaps be confined,' ſaid the marſhal; 'for the news they carried could not be very pleaſant to the king, and my lord will not longer wait. Conſider well what anſwer you make; for, if it be not agreeable, I am ordered to commence the attack.' They anſwered; 'My lord, only allow us time to collect all the inhabitants together, that we may know their determinations.' 'I conſent to it,' ſaid he.

They entered the town once more, and, by ſound of trumpet in every ſtreet, the inhabitants were ſummoned to the market-place, where, when aſſembled, the chief citizens told them all that had paſſed between them and the marſhal. Having agreed to ſurrender the town, for the releaſe of their hoſtages from priſon, whom they were unwilling to loſe, they returned to the marſhal and ſaid,—'Marſhal, your demands are reaſonable, and we are ready to receive, as ſovereigns, the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter in our town, of which here are the keys. We will accompany you to the duke's quarters, if you will have the goodneſs to eſcort us.' 'I will willingly do that,' ſaid the marſhal. There came out of Entença upwards of ſixty perſons, carrying with them the keys of the gates: the marſhal conducted them to the duke, and obtained

for

for them an audience, where they were well received, and had their hoſtages given up. The duke entered Entença the ſame day, where he was lodged, and as many of his people as could be accommodated.

Four days after the ſurrender of Entença, the ſix deputies returned from Validolid. They were aſked why they had ſtaid ſo long: which they anſwered, by ſaying they could not help it. They had indeed ſeen and ſpoken to the king, who replied that he had heard them, and would adviſe on what anſwer to give; 'but, though we waited eight days for it, we are come back without any, for no further notice was taken of us.' They had heard in Validolid, that the king was expecting great ſuccours from France; that numbers of men at arms were already arrived, and quartered up and down the country; but that their commanders, ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac, were ſtill behind; that the main body of the army, with the knights and ſquires, were on their march for Caſtille, but that thoſe who had been retained to ſerve under the duke of Bourbon were ſtill at their homes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

THE COUNT DE FOIX PERMITS THE FRENCH CAPTAINS TO PASS THROUGH HIS TERRITORIES, ON CONDITION THEY PAY FOR WHATEVER THEY TAKE.—THEY ARRIVE AT ST. JEAN PIED DE PORT, AT THE ENTRANCE OF NAVARRE.

SIR William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac paſſing through France, aſſembled their men in the Toulouſain, Narbonnois and Carcaſſone, where, as they arrived, they quartered themſelves in the richeſt parts, and many never paid any thing for what they took. News was brought to the count de Foix at Orthès, where he reſided, that the French men at arms were advancing near his country, with the intent of marching through it in their way to Caſtille. Thoſe who told him this added,—'But, my lord, the miſchief is, that they pay for nothing they take, and the people fly before them as if they were Engliſh. The captains are ſtill at Carcaſſone, and their men overrun from thence all the adjacent countries. They croſs the Garonne at Toulouſe, and enter Bigorre, from whence they will ſoon be in your territories; and, if they do there, what they have done on their march, they will greatly injure your domains of Béarn. Conſider, therefore, how you will act.'

The

The count de Foix, who had inſtantly formed his reſolution, replied,—'I will, that all my caſtles, as well in Foix as in Béarn, be well garriſoned with men at arms, and that all the country be put on its guard, as if an immediate battle were to take place; for I will not ſuffer from the wars in Caſtille. My lands are free; and, if the French want to paſs through them, they ſhall truly pay for whatever they may want, or they ſhall be ſhut againſt them. This I order you, ſir William and ſir Peter de Béarn, to ſee obeyed.' Theſe two knights were baſtard-brothers, valiant in arms, and able to ſupport the count's orders. They replied, they would undertake the charge willingly.

Proclamation was made, throughout the territories of the count, for every one to provide himſelf with proper arms, and to be prepared to march on inſtant notice, wherever ſent for. Numbers came to Foix, Béarn, and the ſtewartry of Toulouſe, prepared for battle; one hundred of whom, good lances and well appointed, were ſent to the city of Palmes*, under the command of ſir Eſpaing du Lyon; ſir Cicart de St. Legier to Mozeres†; ſir Peter de Béarn poſted himſelf at Belle-put‡, on the entrance into Foix, with another hundred ſpears; ſir Peter de Cabeſtan, at St. Thibaut, on the Garonne; ſir Peter Menaut de Noailles with fifty lances at Po-

* Palmes. Q. la Palme, a village in lower Languedoc, dioceſe of Narbonne.

† Mozeres. Q. Mazeres, on the Gave.

‡ Belle-put. Q. Belpuech.

laminick;

laminick; ſir Peter de la Toce at the caſtle of Lameſun; the baſtard d'Eſpaign at Morlas; ſir Arnold William with, at the utmoſt, one hundred ſpears at Pau*; ſir Guy de la Motte at Montmarſen; ſir Raymond de Châtelneuf at Sauveterre†; ſir Evan de Foix, baſtard-ſon to the count, at Monteſquieu‡; ſir Verdol de Nenoſan, and ſir John de Sainte Marcel, at Oron§; ſir Hector de la Garde at Mont-gerbiel; ſir John de Châtelneuf at Erciel; ſir John l'Aiſne, who had the command of the caſtle of Beauvoiſin, was ordered to be very attentive to the whole of that frontier, and ſent his couſin, ſir Arnaulton d'Eſpaign, to St. Gaudens‖. In ſhort, there was not a town or caſtle in Foix and Béarn unprovided with men at arms, which the count ſaid were ſufficient to oppoſe double their numbers; for they amounted, in the whole, to twenty thouſand picked men at arms.

It was told to ſir William de Lignac, who reſided at Toulouſe, and ſir Walter de Paſſac, at Carcaſſone, how the count de Foix had ſummoned his men at arms and reinforced all his garriſons; and that it was reported he would not ſuffer their army to paſs through his country. The two knights, on hearing this, though captains of the others, were

---

* Pau, a city in Béarn.

† Sauveterre, ſeven leagues from Pau.

‡ Monteſquieu. Q. Monteſquieu de Volvetre.

§ Oron. Q. Ornolac, a town in Foix, dioceſe of Pamiers.

‖ St. Gaudens, a town in Gaſcony, capital of the Nebouzan, ſituated on the Garonne.

much

much aſtoniſhed, and appointed a day to meet and confer on the ſubject. They met at the caſtle of Aury, half way between Toulouſe and Carcaſſone, when the following converſation paſſed on the means of gaining permiſſion from the count de Foix to march through his territories:

'I wonder,' ſaid ſir William, 'very much, that neither the king of France nor his council have written to him, to obtain liberty for us to march quietly through Foix and Béarn. You muſt go to him, ſir Walter, and amicably explain how we are ſent by the king of France to continue our march peaceably, and to pay for whatever we may want; for you muſt know, that the count de Foix is ſo powerful, that he can, if he pleaſe, ſhut up the paſſage, and force us to go round by Arragon, which would be too long, and much againſt us. In truth, I know not of whom he is ſuſpicious, nor why he has thus ſtrengthened his towns and caſtles, nor if he have formed any connection with the duke of Lancaſter; but I beg of you to go thither, and learn the truth of what we have heard.' 'I will willingly do ſo,' replied ſir Walter; and the two knights, having dined together, took leave of each other, and departed different ways: ſir William de Lignac returned to Toulouſe, and ſir Walter de Paſſac, attended by only forty horſe, croſſed the Garonne at St. Thibaut, where he met ſir Menaut de Noailles, who entertained him handſomely. Sir Walter aſked, where he could find the count de Foix. He replied, 'At Orthès.'

The two knights having paſſed ſome little time together, converſing on different matters, ſeparated, and ſir Walter went to St. Gaudens, where he made good cheer. On the morrow he came to St. John de Riviere, and, riding through Lane-bourg, ſkirted Malvoiſin, and lay at Tournay, an incloſed town of France. The next day he dined at Tarbes, and ſtaid the whole day: having met the lord d'Anchin, and ſir Menaut de Barbaſan, two great barons of Béarn, they had much converſation together; but, as the lord de Barbaſan was an Armagnac, he would not ſay any thing favourable of the count de Foix. Sir Walter, on the morrow, left Tarbes, and dined at Morlas in Béarn, where he found ſir Reginald William, baſtard-brother to the count, who received him kindly, and ſaid, —'Sir Walter, you will meet my lord of Foix at Orthès, who, you may be aſſured, will be glad to ſee you.' 'God grant it may be ſo,' anſwered ſir Walter; 'for I am come purpoſely to wait on him.'

They dined together, and ſir Walter went afterwards to Mont-gabriel, where he lay. On the enſuing day he arrived at Orthès, about eight o'clock in the morning, but could not ſee the count until the afternoon, when he uſually left his chamber. The count de Foix, hearing of the arrival of ſir Walter de Paſſac, haſtened to leave his apartment ſooner than common; and ſir Walter, ſeeing him come out of his chamber, advanced to meet him, and ſaluted him very reſpectfully. The count, who was perfectly

perfectly polite, returned the ſalute, and, taking him by the hand, ſaid,—'Sir Walter, you are welcome: what buſineſs has brought you to Béarn?' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'ſir William de Lignac and myſelf, whom the king of France has appointed commanders of the force which, you muſt have heard, he is ſending to aſſiſt the king of Caſtille, have been given to underſtand that you intend to prevent us, by ſhutting your country of Béarn againſt us and our men.' The count replied,—'Sir Walter, under favour, I never mean to cloſe my country againſt you, nor any perſon who may travel peaceably through it, and pay honeſtly and fairly for whatever they may want, to the ſatisfaction of my people; for I have ſworn to defend and protect them in their rights, as good landholders ought to do, for upon theſe terms do they poſſeſs them. But I have heard that you have a ſet of Bretons, Barrois, Lorainers and Burgundians, who never think of paying. It is againſt ſuch I ſhall cloſe my country; for I will not have my people harraſſed nor oppreſſed.'

'It is the intention of my brother-commander and myſelf,' replied ſir Walter, 'that no one paſs through your lands without paying for all things peaceably and to the contentment of your people, otherwiſe let him be arreſted and puniſhed according to your laws, and make reſtitution for the damage he may have done, or we will make ſatisfaction for him, on having him given up to us; and, if no gentleman, we will

will inflict ſuch exemplary juſtice on him, in the preſence of your people, that all may take warning. Should the offender be a gentleman, we will make ample reſtitution for what he may have done, ſhould he be unable ſo to do himſelf. This order ſhall be proclaimed, by ſound of trumpet, in all our quarters, and we will have it repeated when on the point of entering your territories, ſo that no one may excuſe himſelf, by pleading ignorance, and in conſequence act otherwiſe than honeſtly. Tell me, if this be ſatisfactory to you.'

'Yes, ſir Walter,' replied the count, 'I am contented with what you ſay: and you are welcome to this country, for I ſee you with pleaſure: but come, let us go to dinner, it is now time, and we can have ſome further converſation. Accurſed be this war of Portugal, ſir Walter; for I never ſuffered ſo much as I did in one battle between the kings of Caſtille and Portugal, when I loſt the flower of my men at arms from Béarn, who were there ſlain. When they took leave of me, I forewarned them to act with caution, for the Portugueſe were a hardy race, who, whenever they had the upper hand, ſhewed mercy to none. I adviſe you, therefore, that when you and ſir William de Lignac, who are the commanders of the men at arms that have paſſed, and of thoſe that are to follow, are arrived in Caſtille, and the king aſks counſel of you, you be not too haſty in recommending a battle with the duke of Lancaſter and the king of Portugal, without evi-

dent

dent advantage, nor with the Engliſh and Portugueſe; for they are a hungry race, and the Engliſh are, for two reaſons, eager to fight. They have not gained any thing for ſome time, but rather loſt, conſequently are poor: they therefore wiſh to hazard an engagement, in hopes of gain; and thoſe who are bold, and anxious to obtain the property of others, fight valiantly, and are commonly fortunate. The other reaſon is, that the duke of Lancaſter ſees clearly he can never ſucceed in winning the crown of Caſtille, which he claims in right of his wife, but by a battle; and that, if the day ſhould be his, and the king defeated, the whole of Caſtille would ſurrender, and tremble before him. For this has he landed in Galicia, and given one of his daughters in marriage to the king of Portugal, who is to aſſiſt him with all his might in his claim. I mention this, becauſe ſhould matters turn out unfortunate, you and ſir William de Lignac would be more blamed than any others.'

'My lord,' anſwered ſir Walter, 'I return you many thanks for the advice you give me. I ought to follow what you ſay; for you are, at this day, the wiſeſt of Chriſtian princes, and the moſt fortunate in your affairs. But my companion and myſelf are under the duke of Bourbon, who is our commander in chief; and, until he be arrived in Caſtille, we ſhall not haſten our march, and will not, for what any perſon may ſay, preſs the engaging with our enemies.'

Other

Other converſation now took place, until the count de Foix called for wine. When it was brought, ſir Walter and all preſent drank of it, and took leave of the count, who re-entered his chamber. Sir Walter returned to his lodging, accompanied by the knights of the count's houſehold; and, at the uſual hour, he again went to the caſtle and ſupped with the count. On the morrow, after dinner, ſir Walter took leave of the count, who, among other gifts, preſented him on his departure with a handſome horſe and mule. Sir Walter, having returned him his thanks, and his attendants being ready, mounted his horſe and quitted Orthès for Erciel, where he lay that night. He arrived at Tarbes the following day, for he had ridden hard to finiſh this day's journey, where he halted, that he might write to ſir William de Lignac reſpecting the ſucceſs of his viſit to the count de Foix. He told him he might order the army to advance, as they would find the country of Béarn and the towns open to them, by paying for whatever they might want, but not otherwiſe.

The meſſenger delivered this letter to ſir William de Lignac at Toulouſe, who, having read it, communicated the contents to the leaders of the men at arms, and gave them orders to begin the march, and to pay for whatever they might want in Béarn, or they would be called upon to make due reſtitution.

This order was proclaimed, by ſound of trumpet, in all their quarters; and, ſhortly after, the men at arms began their march from Toulouſe,

louſe, Carcaſſone and other places, towards Bigorre. Sir William de Lignac left Toulouſe, and, on his arrival at Tarbes, found his brother-commander, ſir Walter de Paſſac. They mutually entertained each other with good cheer, as was natural, while their men at arms were continually paſſing towards Bigorre, where they were to aſſemble and traverſe Foix and Béarn, in a body, to croſs the Gave at Orthès.

The inſtant you leave Béarn you enter the country of the Baſques*, where the king of England has large poſſeſſions in the archbiſhoprick of Bordeaux and biſhoprick of Bayonne. The inhabitants of fourſcore villages, with churches, attached to England, on hearing of this march of the French, where greatly alarmed leſt their country would be overrun and ſpoiled, for at that time there were not any men at arms to defend it. Thoſe therefore counſelled together who were of the moſt influence and of the largeſt properties, and determined to negotiate with the French for the ranſom of their country. They, in conſequence, ſent four deputies to Orthès, empowered to treat for peace. They related to Ernauton du Pin, a ſquire of the count de Foix, an agreeable and diſcreet man, the cauſe of their coming, and entreated him, when, in two days time, ſir William and ſir Walter ſhould come to Orthès, to aſſiſt them in their treaty. This Ernauton readily promiſed; and as they lodged with him, he aided them ſo

* Baſques, a ſmall country near the Pyrenées, bounded by Spain, the ſea, the river Adour and Béarn.

much

much that they were well ſatisfied to pay two thouſand francs to ſave their country from ruin. The count de Foix again entertained the commanders at dinner, and gave ſir William de Lignac a beautiful horſe. On the morrow, they marched to Sauveterre, and entered the country of the Baſques; and though it had been ranſomed, they ſeized proviſion wherever they found any, but continued their march, without doing further miſchief, to St. Jean Pied de Port, at the entrance of Navarre.

CHAP. XXXI.

SIR JOHN HOLLAND AND SIR REGINALD DE ROYE PERFORM A TILT, IN THE TOWN OF ENTENÇA, BEFORE THE KING AND QUEEN OF PORTUGAL AND THE DUKE AND DUCHESS OF LANCASTER.

YOU have before heard how the town of Entença ſurrendered to the duke of Lancaſter, for the king of Caſtille ſent thither no aſſiſtance; and how the ducheſs of Lancaſter and her daughter viſited the king and queen of Portugal at Oporto, when the king and his court, as was right, received them moſt honourably. During the ſtay of the duke of Lancaſter in Entença, a herald arrived from Validolid, who demanded where ſir John Holland was lodged. On being ſhewn thither, he found ſir John within, and, bending his knee, preſented him a letter, ſaying; 'Sir, I am a herald at arms, whom ſir Reginald de Roye ſends hither: he ſalutes you by

by me; and you will be pleaſed to read this letter.' Sir John anſwered, he would willingly do ſo. Having opened it, he read that ſir Reginald de Roye entreated him, for the love of his miſtreſs, that he would deliver him from his vow, by tilting with him three courſes with the lance, three attacks with the ſword, three with the battle-axe, and three with the dagger; and that, if he choſe to come to Validolid, he had provided him an eſcort of ſixty ſpears; but, if it were more agreeable to him to remain in Enteuça, he deſired he would obtain from the duke of Lancaſter a paſſport for himſelf and thirty companions.

When ſir John Holland had peruſed the letter, he ſmiled, and, looking at the herald, ſaid, —'Friend, thou art welcome; for thou haſt brought me what pleaſes me much, and I accept the challenge. Thou wilt remain in my lodging, with my people, and, in the courſe of to-morrow, thou ſhalt have my anſwer, whether the tilts are to be in Galicia or Caſtille.' The herald replied, 'God grant it.' He remained in ſir John's lodgings, where he was made comfortable; and ſir John went to the duke of Lancaſter, whom he found in converſation with the marſhal, and ſhewed the letter the herald had brought. 'Well,' ſaid the duke, 'and have you accepted it?' 'Yes, by my faith have I; and why not? I love nothing better than fighting, and the knight entreats me to indulge him: conſider, therefore, where you would chooſe it ſhould take place.' The duke muſed a while, and then ſaid; 'It ſhall be performed in this town:

town: have a paſſport made out in what terms you pleaſe, and I will ſeal it.' 'It is well ſaid,' replied ſir John; 'and I will, in God's name, ſoon make out the paſſport.'

The paſſport was fairly written and ſealed, for thirty knights and ſquires to come and return; and ſir John Holland, when he delivered it to the herald, preſented him with a handſome mantle lined with minever and twelve nobles. The herald took leave and returned to Valido-lid, where he related what had paſſed, and ſhewed his preſents.

News of this tournament was carried to Oporto, where the king of Portugal kept his court. 'In the name of God,' ſaid the king, 'I will be preſent at it, and ſo ſhall my queen and the ladies.' 'Many thanks,' replied the ducheſs; for I ſhall be accompanied by the king and queen when I return.' It was not long after this converſation, that the king of Portugal, the queen, the ducheſs, with her daughter and the ladies of the court, ſet out for Entença, in grand array. The duke of Lancaſter, when they were near at hand, mounted his horſe, and, attended by a numerous company, went to meet them. When the king and duke met, they embraced each other moſt kindly, and entered the town together, where their lodgings were as well prepared as they could be in ſuch a place, though they were not ſo magnificent as if they had been at Paris.

Three days after the arrival of the king of Portugal, came ſir Reginald de Roye, handſomely accompanied by knights and ſquires, to the amount

amount of ſix ſcore horſe. They were all properly lodged; for the duke had given his officers ſtrict orders they ſhould be well taken care of. On the morrow, ſir John Holland and ſir Reginald de Roye armed themſelves, and rode into a ſpacious cloſe in Entença; well ſanded, where the tilts were to be performed. Scaffolds were erected for the ladies, the king, the duke, and the many Engliſh lords who had come to witneſs the combat; for none had ſtaid at home.

The two knights, who were to perform this deed of arms, entered the liſts ſo well armed and equipped that nothing was wanting. Their ſpears, battle-axes and ſwords, were brought them; and each, being mounted on the beſt of horſes, placed himſelf about a bow-ſhot diſtant from the other, but, at times they all pranced about on their horſes moſt gallantly, for they knew every eye to be upon them.

All being now arranged for their combat, which was to include every thing, except puſhing it to extremity, though no one could foreſee what miſchief might happen, nor how it would end; for they were to tilt with pointed lances, then with ſwords, which were ſo ſharp that ſcarcely a helmet could reſiſt their ſtrokes; and theſe were to be ſucceeded by battle-axes and daggers, each ſo well tempered that nothing could withſtand them. Now, conſider the perils thoſe run who engage in ſuch combats to exalt their honour, for one unlucky ſtroke puts an end to the buſineſs.

Having braced their targets and examined each

each other through the viſors of their helmets, they ſpurred on their horſes, ſpear in hand. Though they allowed their horſes to gallop as they pleaſed, they advanced on as ſtraight a line as if it had been drawn with a cord, and hit each other on the viſors, with ſuch force that ſir Reginald's lance was ſhivered into four pieces, which flew to a greater height than they could have been thrown. All preſent allowed this to be gallantly done. Sir John Holland ſtruck ſir Reginald likewiſe on the viſor, but not with the ſame ſucceſs, and I will tell you why. Sir Reginald had but ſlightly laced on his helmet, ſo that it was held by one thong only, which broke at the blow, and the helmet flew over his head, leaving sir Reginald bare-headed. Each paſſed the other, and ſir John Holland bore his lance without halting. The ſpectators cried out that it was a handſome courſe. The knights returned to their ſtations, when ſir Reginald's helmet was fitted on again, and another lance given to him: ſir John graſped his own, which was not worſted. When ready, they ſet off full gallop, for they had excellent horſes under them, which they well knew how to manage, and again ſtruck each other on the helmets, ſo that ſparks of fire came from them, but chiefly from ſir John Holland's. He received a very ſevere blow, for this time the lance did not break; neither did ſir John's, which hit the viſor of his adverſary without much effect, paſſing through and leaving it on the crupper of the horſe, and ſir Reginald was once more bare headed. 'Ha,' cried the

Engliſh

Engliſh to the French, 'he does not fight fair: why is not his helmet as well buckled on as ſir John Holland's? We ſay he is playing tricks: tell him to put himſelf on an equal footing with his adverſary.' 'Hold your tongues,' ſaid the duke, 'and let them alone: in arms, every one takes what advantage he can: if ſir John think there is any advantage in thus faſtening on the helmet, he may do the ſame. But for my part, were I in their ſituations, I would lace my helmet at tight as poſſible; and, if one hundred were aſked their opinions, there would be fourſcore of my way of thinking.' The Engliſh, on this, were ſilent, and never again interfered. The ladies declared, they had nobly juſted; and they were much praiſed by the king of Portugal, who ſaid to ſir John Fernando, 'In our country they do not tilt ſo well, nor ſo gallantly: what ſay you ſir John?' 'By my faith, ſir,' replied he, 'they do tilt well; and formerly I ſaw as good juſts before your brother, when we were at Elvas to oppoſe the king of Caſtille, between this Frenchman and ſir William Windſor; but I never heard that his helmet was tighter laced then than it is now.'

The king on this turned from ſir John to obſerve the knights, who were about to begin their third courſe. Sir John and ſir Reginald eyed each other, to ſee if any advantage were to be gained, for their horſes were ſo excellent that they could manage them as they pleaſed, and, ſticking ſpurs into them, hit their helmets ſo ſharply that their eyes ſtruck fire, and the ſhafts of their

lances

lances were broken. Sir Reginald was again unhelmed, for he could never avoid this happening, and they paſſed each other without falling. All now declared, they had well juſted; though the Engliſh, excepting the duke of Lancaſter, blamed greatly ſir Reginald: but he ſaid, 'he conſidered that man as wiſe who in combat knows how to ſeize his vantage. Know,' added he, addreſſing himſelf to ſir Thomas Percy and ſir Thomas Moreaux, 'that ſir Reginald de Roye is not now to be taught how to tilt: he is better ſkilled than ſir John Holland, though he has borne himſelf well.'

After the courſes of the lance, they fought three rounds with ſwords, battle-axes and daggers, without either of them being wounded. The French carried off ſir Reginald to his lodgings, and the Engliſh did the ſame to ſir John Holland.

The duke of Lancaſter entertained this day at dinner all the French knights and ſquires: the ducheſs was ſeated beſide him, and ſir Reginald de Roye next to her. After dinner, they entered the preſence-chamber; and the ducheſs, taking ſir Reginald by the hand, led him thither: they were followed by the other knights, who converſed on arms and on other ſubjects a long time, almoſt until wine was brought. The ducheſs then drew nearer to the French knights, and thus ſpoke: 'I wonder greatly how you knights of France can think of ſupporting the claims of a baſtard; for it is well known to the whole world, that Henry, who

who called himſelf king of Caſtille, was a baſtard, and how you can thus, with your arms and counſel, diſinherit the right heir of Caſtille and deprive him of the crown: for this I know, that myſelf and ſiſter are the legal daughters of the late king, don Pedro; and God, who is Truth itſelf, knows that our claim on Caſtille is juſt.' The lady, when ſpeaking of her father don Pedro, could not refrain from tears, as ſhe doated on him. Sir Reginald de Roye bowed to her, and thus replied: 'Madam, we know that what you have ſaid is true; but our lord, the king of France, holds a different opinion from yours, and, as we are his ſubjects, we muſt make war for him, and go whitherſoever he may ſend us, for we cannot diſobey him.' At theſe words, ſir John Holland and ſir Thomas Percy handed the lady to her chamber, and the wine and ſpices were brought. The duke and his company drank of them, and the French knights took their leave: the horſes being ready at their lodgings, they mounted and left Entença. They rode that day to Noya, which was attached to the king of Caſtille, where they repoſed themſelves, and then continued their journey to Validolid.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL PROMISES TO ENTER CASTILLE WHILE THE DUKE OF LANCASTER FINISHES THE CONQUEST OF GALICIA, AND THEN TO UNITE THEIR FORCES.

THE king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter had a long conference together the day after this tournament, when, I believe, their plans of operation were ſettled. The king of Portugal having aſſembled his army ready to take the field, it was determined that he ſhould enter Caſtille, while the duke remained in Galicia to conquer ſuch towns and caſtles as had not acknowledged him for king; and it was likewiſe reſolved that if king John of Caſtille made any movements which ſhewed an inclination for battle, they were to join their forces. It was judged, that if the two armies were always united, there would be difficulty in procuring forage for ſuch numbers. Other evils might ariſe alſo reſpecting forage and quarters; for the Engliſh are haſty and proud, and the Portugueſe hot and impetuous, eaſily angered, and not ſoon pacified. But, in the expectation of a battle, they would agree as well together as Gascons.

Having determined as above, the king of Portugal addreſſed the duke of Lancaſter,—'Sir, when I ſhall learn that you have taken the field, I will do the

the like; for my men are ready and eager for battle.' The duke replied; 'I will not long continue idle; but as I have heard there are ſome towns in Galicia ſtill in rebellion, and that the people will not acknowledge me, I muſt firſt conquer them, and will then march where I may the ſooneſt meet my enemies.'

Upon this, the king and queen of Portugal took leave of the duke and ducheſs, as did the lady Catherine their daughter; for it had been ſettled, that during the war ſhe ſhould live with her ſiſter in Portugal, as the place of greateſt ſecurity for her, and the ducheſs was to return to Sant Jago. Thus were theſe matters arranged, and the king of Portugal and his court ſet out for Oporto, and the ducheſs for Sant Jago, each party well eſcorted by knights and ſquires; but the duke remained with his army at Entença, or in the neighbourhood. They were very eager to commence the campaign, for it was now the pleaſant month of April, when the graſs was ripe in the meads, the corn in ear, and the flowers in ſeed; for it is ſo hot in that country, that the harveſt is over in June: they therefore wiſhed to perform ſome exploits in arms while the weather was ſo fine, for it was a pleaſure at ſuch a ſeaſon to be out in the fields.

We muſt now ſpeak of the arrangements of the French, and of the king of Caſtille, as fully as we have done of the Engliſh.

CHAP. XXXIII.

SIR WILLIAM DE LIGNAC AND SIR WALTER DE PASSAC TRAVERSE THE KINGDOM OF NAVARRE WITH THEIR ARMY, AND ARRIVE AT BURGOS, WHERE THEY MEET THE KING OF CASTILLE.

YOU have heard how sir Walter de Paſſac obtained permiſſion from the count de Foix for the French army, intended for Caſtille, to paſs through Béarn. The count likewiſe gave, of his own free will, (for he was no way bounden to do ſo) very rich preſents to ſuch knights and ſquires as waited on him at the caſtle of Orthès, to pay their reſpects, and tell him what was paſſing in the way of news. To ſome he gave two hundred, to others one hundred, fifty or forty florins, according to their ranks; and, as the treaſurer aſſured me, the paſſage of this firſt division coſt the count de Foix one thouſand francs, without including the preſents he made of courſers and hackneys. Now ſhew me the prince who does ſuch things, or who has the inclination to do them. In good truth, ſo desirous am I of ſpeaking to his advantage, it is a pity that ſuch a one ſhould ever grow old and die; for he is not ſurrounded by baſe minions, who tell him, 'Take this, give that; take on all sides.' No, he never had, nor will have any ſuch about his perſon: he does all himſelf; for he has, by nature, abilities to know to whom

whom he ſhould give, and from whom he ſhould take, when required. True it is, that the large preſents he makes oppreſs his people; for his revenue is not equal to giving every year at leaſt sixty thouſand francs, and keeping up his eſtabliſhments, which are unequalled by any one, and to the amaſſing a treaſure to ſerve him in caſe of accidents. He has been for theſe laſt thirty years, laying by large ſums; and they ſay there is in the tower of Orthès one hundred thouſand francs, thirty times told. His ſubjects only pray to God that he may have long life, and never complain of any thing he does; and I have heard them ſay, that on the day he ſhall die, there will be ten thouſand perſons in Orthès who would wiſh to die alſo. Consider that this muſt be the effect of their affection; and, if they have ſuch great love for him, they have reaſon for it, as he maintains ſtrict juſtice, and his ſubjects enjoy their lands free and in peace, like to a terreſtrial paradiſe. Let it not be thought that I thus ſpeak through flattery, or my love to him, or for the preſents he has made me; for I can readily prove all I have ſaid of the gallant count de Foix, and ſtill more, by a thouſand knights and ſquires, if called upon. Let us return to ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac, the commanders of the men at arms deſtined for Caſtille.

Having croſſed Baſques, and the paſs of Roncevalles, which took them three days, (for, though

though it was in the month of April, the ſnows and cold were ſo deep and ſevere, that they had much difficulty in the paſſage with their men and horſes,) they arrived at Pampeluna, the kingdom of Navarre being open to them. The king of Navarre was unwilling to diſpleaſe the king of Caſtille, as his ſon Charles de Navarre had married his sister; and when the laſt treaties were concluded, during the reign of the late don Henry, they were ſo ſtrong as bound the king of Navarre to peace. Indeed, he can never withſtand the king of Caſtille, unleſs he have the kings of Arragon and England for his allies.

The king of Navarre very amicably received, at Pampeluna, the leaders of this force, and had them, with ſome other knights that accompanied them, to dine with him in his palace. After dinner, he led them into his council chamber, and began converſations on different ſubjects (for he was a wondrous ſubtle and eloquent man), and at last turned the diſcourſe on France, and harangued on the wrongs the king of France and his council had unjuſtly done him, by depriving him of his lands in Normandy, which had deſcended to him from his predecessors the kings of France and Navarre. This injury he ſhould never forget, for he had lost, by the ſeizure of lands in Normandy, Languedoc, and in the barony of Montpensier about sixty thouſand francs of yearly rent, and in reſpect of this grievance he knew not to whom, except to God,

to

to apply for redreſs. 'I do not ſay this, my lords,' added he, 'that you ſhould any way interfere in the buſineſs; for I know you have not the power, nor would any thing you could ſay be listened to. You are not of the king's council, but knights-errant and ſoldiers, who are obliged to march whereſoever the king or his council may order you. This is fact; but I ſay it to you, becauſe I know not to whom I can complain, except to all who ſhall come from France through this country.'

Sir Walter de Paſſac replied,—'Sir, what you ſay is true: nothing will be done by any recommendation of ours; for, in truth, we are not of the king's council. We go whither we are ſent; and my lord of Bourbon, uncle to the king, is our commander, and, as you know, is to follow us this road: you may lay your complaints before him, either when coming or on his return, for he has much influence, and your wrongs may be redreſſed. May God aſſiſt you, for the honour you have done us! When returned to France, we ſhall praiſe your attentions, to the king, as well as to the duke of Bourbon, our commander, whom we ſhall ſee firſt.'

Wine was now brought, of which they partook, and then left the king, who parted from them kindly, and ſent to each, at their lodgings, a handſome war-horſe, to their great joy. The men at arms thus paſſed Navarre, and arrived at Logrogno, were they inquired after the king

of

of Caſtille. They were told he had reſided for ſome time at Validolid, but that he was then at Burgos, making great preparations of ſtores and proviſion.

They then followed the road towards Burgos, leaving that into Galicia, which country was not ſecure, for the Engliſh had marched far into it. News was brought to the king of Caſtille that great ſuccours were on their march, to the amount of two thouſand lances from France. This delighted him greatly, and he ſet out from Validolid, accompanied by ten thouſand horſe, for Burgos, where the French, on their coming, were quartered over the country. They were daily joined by others from France.

CHAP. XXXIV.

MANY PLANS ARE OFFERED TO THE KING OF CASTILLE FOR CARRYING ON THE WAR: HE IS DETERMINED BY THE COMMANDERS OF THE FRENCH FORCE TO DELAY AN ENGAGEMENT UNTIL THE ARRIVAL OF THE DUKE OF BOURBON, AND TO MAKE EXCURSIONS FROM THE DIFFERENT GARRISONS.

SIR William de Lignac and sir Walter de Paſſac, on their arrival at Burgos, waited on the king, at his palace, who received them kindly, and thanked them for the trouble and pains they had taken, out of affection to him, and for coming to aſſiſt him. The knights bow-

ed

ed, and ſaid, 'that if they could do any thing eſſential for his ſervice, their pains and trouble would ſoon be forgotten.' Many councils were holden, to conſider whether to march againſt the enemy, or carry on the war by excurſions from the garriſons, until the duke of Bourbon arrived. The two knights ſaid; 'Send for ſir Oliver du Gueſclin, ſir Peter de Villaines, ſir Barrois des Barres, Châtelmorant, and the other companions, who are better acquainted with this country than ourſelves, for they have come hither before us, and we will then confer together; and if it pleaſe God, your kingdom ſhall, from our counſels, acquire both profit and renown.'

The king ſaid, they had ſpoken openly and loyally, and he was willing their advice ſhould be followed. Secretaries were inſtantly employed in writing preſſing letters to the different knights and others, whom they wiſhed to ſee, which were ſent off by meſſengers to the different parts where they reſided. When it was known to them that ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac were come, and had ſent for them, they were much pleaſed. They left the towns and caſtles in which they were garriſoned, under the command of ſuch as they could depend on, and haſtened to Burgos, where, in a ſhort time, good part of the chivalry of France were collected.

The king of Caſtille held a grand council with the barons and knights of France, on the manner of commencing the campaign, for they knew

knew the enemy had taken the field. He was desirous of acting in a manner becoming the honour of a king, and for the benefit of his country. Many were the debates, and the amount of the force in Caſtille was eſtimated. It was ſaid that the king could ſummon into the field thirty thouſand horſe, with their riders armed according to the cuſtom of the country, with darts and javelins, and thirty thouſand infantry, if not more, with ſlings. The French knights conſidered all this, and ſaid it was certainly a great number of people, but it was uſeleſs as an army; for they had formerly acted in ſo cowardly a manner that no confidence could be placed in them. Through their cowardice, the prince of Wales had won the battle of Najara; and the Caſtillians had been completely defeated by the Portugueſe at Aljubarota.

The count de Lerma took up this ſpeech, and ſupported the Caſtillians. By way of excuſe, he ſaid,—'With regard to the battle of Najara, I muſt beg leave to ſpeak to that. It is true that many noble knights from France were preſent with sir Bertrand de Gueſclin, who fought valiantly, for they were all ſlain or captured; but you muſt alſo know, that the flower of knighthood, of the whole world, was under the command of the prince of Wales, whoſe good ſenſe, courage and prudence, were unrivalled. Such is not now the caſe with the duke of Lancaſter. The prince had, at the battle of Najara, full ten thouſand ſpears, and six thouſand archers; and among the chivalry were three thouſand

ſand equal to the Rolands and Oliviers; ſuch as ſir John Chandos, ſir Thomas Felton, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir Garſis du Châtel, the lord de Raix, the Lord de Rieux, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, and hundreds more whom I could name, who were then preſent, but who are either dead or have turned to our ſide. Theſe are not now oppoſed to us, nor is the event ſo doubtful as it was in former times, ſo that whoever has confidence in me, will join my opinion for an inſtant combat; and that we march to croſs the river Duero, which will redound to our honour.'

This ſpeech of the count de Lerma was attentively liſtened to by the council, and many were of his mind. Sir Oliver de Gueſclin next ſpoke: 'Count de Lerma, we know that what you have uttered proceeds from the good ſenſe and courage you poſſeſs; and, ſuppoſe we were to march and offer combat to the duke of Lancaſter, had we no other enemy, we ſhould do well; but you have forgotten the king of Portugal, whom we ſhall have on our rear, and whoſe forces conſist, as we have been informed, of twenty-five hundred lances and thirty thouſand other men. It was the dependance on the king of Portugal that made the duke land in Galicia; and we know that their alliance is very much ſtrengthened by the marriage of the king with the duke's daughter. Now, let us hear what you can ſay to this.'

'In

'In God's name,' replied the count de Lerma, 'the French being four thouſand lances, are more than a match to combat the duke of Lancaster; and the king, with his Caſtillians, to the amount of twenty thouſand horſe and thirty thouſand foot, as they ſay, may ſurely withſtand the king of Portugal: it appears to me ſo clear, that I will riſk the event with them.'

The knights from France, ſeeing themſelves thus rebuffed by the count de Lerma, ſaid,—'By God, you are in the right, and we in the wrong, for we ought firſt to have weighed what you have ſaid: it ſhall be ſo, ſince you will it, and no one ſeems to oppoſe it.' 'My lords,' ſaid the king, 'I beg of you to conſider well the advice you give me, not through haſte or pride, but with all attention, that the beſt plan may be adopted. I do not look on what has been ſaid as deciſive, nor approve of it: I will that we meet again in this ſame apartment to-morrow, and particularly that you ſir William de Lignac, and you ſir Walter de Paſſac, who have been ſent hither by the king of France and duke of Bourbon, as the commanders in chief, do confer together, and examine carefully what will be the moſt honourable and profitable for my kingdom; for you ſhall determine whether we march to offer combat to our enemies or not.'

They bowed to the king, and ſaid they would cheerfully attend to his orders. The conference then broke up, and each retired to his lodging. The French knights had this day after dinner,

and

and in the evening, much converſation on the ſubject. Some ſaid,—'We cannot in honour offer battle until the arrival of the duke of Bourbon; for how do we know what will be his intentions, to fight or not? Should we engage and be victorious, the duke will be highly indignant againſt the captains from France: ſhould we be defeated, we not only ruin ourſelves, but Caſtille alſo; for if we be ſlain, there can be no hopes of recovery to the Caſtillians, and the king will loſe his crown. We ſhall be blamed, ſhould this happen, more than any others; for it will be ſaid, that we propoſed the battle, and were ignorant adviſers. Beſides, we know not if the country be unanimous in their affection to the king, or whether they may not have ſent, underhand, for the duke of Lancaſter and his lady, as the legal heireſs of Caſtille, for ſhe is the daughter of don Pedro, as is well known to all. Now ſhould the Caſtillians ſay, on ſeeing the duke and the Engliſh in the field, that his is the juſteſt cauſe, for that king John is a baſtard, they may turn about towards the latter end of the day, as they did at Najara, and leave us to be ſlain on the ſpot. Thus there is a double danger, for the king and for us. They muſt be mad or fooliſh who adviſe a battle; and why have not thoſe who ought to have ſpoken, ſuch as ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac, delivered their ſentiments?' 'Becauſe,' replied others, 'they wiſhed to know our opinions firſt; for it is not poſſible but that, when they left the council of France and the duke of Bourbon,

Bourbon, they were well inſtructed how to act. We ſhall all know to-morrow.'

There was much diſputing this evening between the knights from France, as well as among thoſe of Caſtille. The wellwiſhers to the king would not adviſe him to offer battle, for the reaſon that if they ſhould be defeated, the kingdom was infallibly loſt. The king himſelf was of this opinion: he dreaded the chances of war, for he was ignorant of the ſupport he ſhould have, and whether he was beloved by all his ſubjects or not.

The matter thus remained until the morrow, when they were again aſſembled in the preſence of the king.

In this conference there were many ſpeakers, for all were deſirous to offer the king advice to the beſt of their abilities: it was viſible the king was againſt the plan of the preceding day, for he had not forgotten the unfortunate event of the battle of Aljubarota, where he was defeated by the king of Portugal with ſuch loſs, that another ſimilar to it would loſe him his realm. When all had delivered their opinions, ſir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac were aſked theirs; for, as they were the commanders in chief, every thing ſhould be ordered and executed by them.

The two knights looking at each other, ſir William ſaid, 'Do you ſpeak, ſir Walter.' 'Not I,' replied ſir Walter: 'do you, for you have been longer uſed to arms than myſelf.' Sir William, having pauſed a while, thus ſpoke: 'Sir king, you ought, methinks, to return many thanks

thanks to this noble chivalry of France, who have come ſo far to ſerve you in your diſtreſs, and who have ſhewn you ſuch affection as to decline ſhutting themſelves up in any of your caſtles or towns, but are eager to take the field and combat your enemies wherever they may find them: which, however, ſaving your grace and the good will you ſhew, cannot be done at preſent for many reaſons; the principal of which is, the abſence of my lord the duke of Bourbon, who will ſoon arrive with a conſiderable reinforcement of men at arms. There are alſo many of our knights and ſquires who have never before been in this country, and are ignorant of the roads, to which they muſt attend; and things which are haſtily concluded never end well. Inſtead, therefore, of attempting a general engagement, we ſhall carry on the war for two or three months, or as long as may be neceſſary, from different garriſons, and let the Engliſh, and Portugueſe overrun Galicia, or other parts, if they can. If they conquer a few towns, it will be no great loſs: we will regain them before we quit the country, for they ſhall only borrow them for a time. To conclude: in warfare there are many unforeſeen events, and the Engliſh during the hot ſeaſon, may, in their various excurſions through Galicia, meet with ſuch difficulties, and ſuffer ſuch diſorders, as may make them repent ever having undertaken the buſineſs; for they will not find the climate like that of France, nor the wines ſo good, nor the water ſo pure, as in our country; but the rivers muddy and

cold

cold from the melting of the ſnows on the mountains, which will chill them and their horſes after the burning heat of the ſun in the day-time, and be the deſtruction of both. They are not of iron or ſteel, and muſt in the end ſuffer from the heats of Caſtille, but like to ourſelves; and we cannot any way more eaſily defeat them than by avoiding a combat, and allowing them to go whitherſoever they pleaſe. They will find nothing to pillage in the low countries, nor any thing to comfort themſelves; for, I am informed that has been all deſtroyed by our people, for which I praiſe them greatly, and, were it now undone, I would have given them ſuch orders. Now, if any perſon can give better advice, let him do ſo, for ſir Walter and myſelf will cheerfully liſten to him.'

The council unanimouſly replied; 'We approve of what ſir William has offered, and cannot but think it the best advice for the king and kingdom of Caſtille.' It was then determined to wait for the duke of Bourbon and the ſtores before they made preparations for taking the field, but to garriſon ſtrongly the frontier, and ſuffer the Engliſh and Portugueſe to overrun Caſtille at their pleaſure; for, when they returned from their excurſions, they could not carry away the land with them. The conference ended, all left the chamber; and this day the king entertained at dinner, in his palace at Burgos, the barons and knights of France: it was magnificently grand, according to the cuſtom in Spain. On the morrow, before noon, all the men at arms were ſent off to their different garriſons,

ſons, with instructions from their leaders how to act. Sir Oliver du Gueſclin, count de Longueville, was ordered, with a thouſand ſpears, to a tolerably strong town on the borders of Galicia, called Ville-faincte;* ſir Reginald and ſir Triſtan de Roye to another town, ten leagues further, but on the frontier of Galicia, called Ville-d'Agillare-de-Champ,† with three hundred lances, ſir Peter de Beleſme, with two hundred lances to Beneventé; the count de Lerma to the town of Zamora; ſir John des Barres, with three hundred, to the caſtle of Noya; ſir John de Châtelmorant and ſir Triſtan de la Jaille, with others, to the city of Valencia; the viſcount de Beſliere to the town of Ribeſda, with ſir John and ſir Robert de Braquemont. In ſuch manner were the men at arms divided: ſir Oliver du Gueſclin was nominated conſtable, having the largest body under his command; and ſir William de Lignac and sir Walter de Paſſac remained near the king at Burgos, and attended him wherever he went.

Thus were affairs managed in Caſtille, waiting for the duke of Bourbon, who was still in France making his preparations. But we will leave the armies of Caſtille and of the duke of Lancaſter, for a ſhort time, and return to them again when neceſſary, to ſpeak of ſuch events as happened in France and England; many of which were strange enough, and dangerous to both kingdoms, but particularly diſpleaſing to the king of England and his council.

* Ville-faincte. Q. Vilalpando.

† Ville-d'Agillare-de-Champ. Q. Avila.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

THE CONSTABLE DE CLISSON MAKES GREAT PREPARATIONS TO INVADE ENGLAND.—MUCH MURMURING AND DISCONTENT IN ENGLAND AGAINST KING RICHARD AND HIS COUNCIL.

I HAVE before related at length, how the grand expedition, which was preparing at Sluys to invade England, was broken up; but to ſhew how much the French were in earneſt; and that it might not be ſaid they had given it over through cowardice, but were ſtill eager to land in England, it was ordered that the conſtable ſhould ſail thither in the month of May, when the weather was fine, and the ſea calm. His force was to conſiſt of four thouſand men at arms and two thouſand croſs-bows, who were to aſſemble in a town of Brittany called Tréguier,* ſituated on the ſea-coaſt, and oppoſite to Cornwall. His preparations, which were very conſiderable, were all made there, and the horſes were to embark at that port, the more easily to overrun England; for without horſes, no war on land can be carried on with effect. In this harbour were numbers of veſſels of all deſcriptions, which were

* Tréguier,—ten leagues north-weſt of St. Brieux, and twenty-three north-eaſt of Breſt.

laden

laden with wines, ſalted meats, biſcuit, and other things in ſuch quantities, as might ſerve them four or five months, without requiring any thing from the country; for the conſtable knew, that when the Engliſh ſhould hear of his landing, they would deſtroy all the lowlands, to prevent him from having any ſupport; and it was for this reaſon he had provided ſuch immenſe ſtores.

Another large fleet, to invade England, was likewiſe prepared at Harfleur, by the lord de Coucy, the lord de St. Pol and the admiral of France, who were to embark on board of it with two thouſand ſpears; but it was ſaid that this was ſolely intended to force the duke of Lancaſter to withdraw himſelf and his army from Caſtille.

The duke of Bourbon was ſtill at Paris; for he knew the duke of Lancaſter muſt return to England, and it would be unneceſſary for him to take ſo long a journey to Caſtille. The army of the conſtable conſiſted of Bretons, Angevins, Manceaux, Saintongers, and knights and ſquires from the adjoining countries. That of the count de St. Pol and the lord de Coucy was compoſed from the iſle of France, Normandy and Picardy. The duke of Bourbon had two thouſand ſpears from Berry, Auvergne, Limouſin and lower Burgundy. Such was the diſtribution of the forces in France; and every man knew how he was to be employed, whether in England or Caſtille.

England was, at this period in greater danger than when the peaſants, under Jack Straw, roſe in rebellion, and marched to London; and I will

tell you the cauſe. The nobles and gentlemen were unanimous, at that time, in their ſupport of the king, but now there were many ſerious differences between them. The king quarrelled with his uncles of York and Gloceſter, and they were equally diſpleaſed with him, cauſed, as it was ſaid, by the intrigues of the duke of Ireland, the ſole confidant of the king. The commonalty, in many towns and cities, had noticed theſe quarrels, and the wiſeſt dreaded the conſequences that might enſue; but the giddy laughed at them, and ſaid, they were owing to the jealouſy of the king's uncles, and becauſe the crown was not on their heads. But others ſaid,—'The king is young, and puts his confidence in youngſters: it would be to his advantage if he conſulted his uncles more, who can only wiſh the proſperity of the country, than that puppy, the duke of Ireland, who is ignorant of all things, and who never ſaw a battle.' Thus were the Engliſh divided; and great diſaſters ſeemed to be at hand, which was perfectly known all over France, and cauſed them to haſten their preparations for invading the country, and adding to its miſeries.

The prelates of England were alſo quarrelling: the archbiſhop of Canterbury with that of York, who was of the houſe of Neville. They hated each other mortally, becauſe the lord Neville had been appointed lieutenant of Northumberland, in preference to the ſons of the earl of Northumberland, ſir Henry and ſir Ralph Percy, which the archbiſhop, who was one of the king's coun-

cil,

cil, had obtained for his brother, through the duke of Ireland.

As ſoon as the Engliſh learnt that the camps near Sluys were broken up, and the invaſion given over, great murmurings were general throughout England. Thoſe who wiſhed miſchief ſaid,—'What is now become of our grand enterpriſes and our valiant captains? Would that our gallant king Edward and his ſon, the prince of Wales, were now alive! We uſed to invade France and rebuff our enemies, ſo that they were afraid to ſhew themſelves, or venture to engage us, and, when they did ſo, they were defeated. What a glorious expedition did our king Edward, of happy memory, make, when he landed in Normandy, and marched through France. After many battles and other fine exploits, he defeated king Philip and the whole power of the French at Crecy, and took Calais before he returned home. Where are the knights and princes of England who can now do ſuch things? Did not likewiſe the prince of Wales, ſon of this gallant king, make priſoner the king of France, and defeat his army at Poitiers, with the ſmall force he had, compared with that of king John? In thoſe days we were feared, and our renown was ſpread abroad, wherever chivalry was eſteemed; but at this moment we muſt be ſilent, for they know not how to make war, except on our pockets: for this they are ready enough. Only a child reigns now in France, and yet he has given us more alarms than any of

his predeceſſors, and ſhews good courage and inclination to invade us. It was not his fault, but that of his adviſers, that he did not attempt it. We have ſeen the time when, if ſuch a fleet had been known to have been collected at Sluys, the good king and his ſons would have haſtened to attack it; but now-a-days the nobles are delighted to have nothing to do, and remain in peace; but they will not ſuffer us to live in quiet, as long as we have any thing in our purſes. We have ſeen the time when conqueſts were made by us in France, and no taxes demanded; but every one was made rich from the great wealth which abounded in France. What is become of the immenſe ſums which have been raiſed, as well by taxes as by the current revenue? They muſt have been waſted or purloined. We muſt know how the country is governed, and who are the adviſers of the king: it is not right that ſuch things be longer unattended to; for this country is not ſo rich, nor able to bear the burdens France does, which abounds in all things. It ſeems, alſo, that we are weakened in underſtanding and activity as well as in courage; for we uſed to know what was intended by France, and what were its plans, ſome months before they could execute them, by which we were prepared to reſiſt them. Now, we are not only ignorant of what is going forward in France, but they are well informed of all that paſſes, though under the ſeal of ſecreſy, in our councils, and we know not whom to blame. But a day muſt come when all this will be pub-

lic;

lic; for there are ſecret traitors in the council, and the ſooner this is inquired into the better: we may delay it ſo long that it will be too late to provide a remedy.' Such converſations were very common, not only with knights and ſquires, but among the inhabitants of many of the towns, which placed the realm in much danger.

The knights and ſquires who had been ſummoned to the defence of the kingdom, now demanded their pay; and other large ſums were called for, to defray the great expenſes the king and his council had been at in guarding the country againſt the invaſion from France. A parliament was therefore aſſembled in London, of the nobles, prelates and commonalty, to conſider of laying a general tax throughout the country to anſwer all theſe demands. The parliament adjourned from London to Weſtminſter, when thoſe ſummoned attended, and indeed many others, who came to hear news. The king and his two uncles of York and Gloceſter were preſent; and the parliament was harangued on the ſubject of the finances, and aſſured that there was not in the royal treaſury more than ſufficient to ſupport, even with economy, the uſual expenſes of the king. The council ſaid, there was no other means than laying a general tax on all the country, if they were deſirous of paying the great ſums the defence of the kingdom had coſt.

Thoſe from the archbiſhoprick of Canterbury, the biſhopricks of Norwich and Warwick, the counties of Devonſhire, Hampſhire and Wiltſhire readily

readily aſſented, becauſe they knew better what had been done, and were more alarmed than thoſe at a greater diſtance, in Wales, Briſtol and Cornwall, who were rebellious, and ſaid,—'We have never ſeen any enemies come into this country: why therefore ſhould we be thus heavily taxed, and nothing done?' 'Yes, yes,' replied others; 'let them call on the king's council, the archbiſhop of York and the duke of Ireland, who received ſixty thouſand francs, for the ranſom of John of Brittany, from the conſtable of France, which ought to have gone to the general profit of the kingdom. Let them call on ſir Simon Burley, ſir William Elmham, ſir Thomas Brand, ſir Robert Treſilian and ſir John Beauchamp, who have governed the king. If they gave a true account of the ſums raiſed in England, or were forced ſo to do, there would be more than money enough to pay all expenſes, and poor people might remain in quiet.'

The king's uncles were much pleaſed when theſe ſpeeches were told them; for thoſe they had named were unfriendly to their intereſts, and oppoſed their obtaining any favours from the court. They encouraged ſuch diſcourſes, and, to gain popularity, ſaid; 'The good people who hold ſuch language are well adviſed in wiſhing to have an account of the management of the finances, and in refuſing to pay their taxes; for, in good truth, there is caſh enough either in the purſes of the king or of thoſe who govern him.'

By

By degrees, this diſcontent was much increaſed among the people, who declared againſt any tax being laid on, and who grew bolder in their language when they ſaw that the king's uncles, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the earls of Saliſbury and Northumberland, with many other great barons, ſupported them. The miniſters, therefore, withdrew the tax, and ſaid that nothing ſhould be done in the matter until Michaelmas, when the parliament would again meet.

Thoſe knights and ſquires who were expecting their pay were much angered againſt the king and his council for their diſappointment, and the miniſters appeaſed them in the beſt manner they could. When the parliament broke up, and the members went different ways, the king did not take leave of his uncles, nor they of him. The king was adviſed to retire into Wales for a time until more favourable circumſtances, which he agreed to, and left London without taking leave of any one. He carried with him all his council, except the archbiſhop of York, who returned into his dioceſe. It was fortunate for him he did ſo, otherwiſe it would have happened to him as to the other counſellors of the king, as I ſhall preſently narrate. But I muſt ſpeak as much of France as of England, when the matter requires it.

CHAP. XXXVI.

THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE WITH SEVERAL OTHERS MAKE PREPARATIONS TO INVADE ENGLAND.—THE DUKE OF BRITTANY PRACTISES TO PREVENT THIS EXPEDITION.

WHEN the ſweet ſeaſon of ſummer and the delightful month of May were come, in the year of our Lord 1387, while the duke of Lancaſter was making conqueſts in Galicia, and, in conjunction with the king of Portugal, overrunning Caſtille without oppoſition; there were, as I before ſaid, great preparations making in France for the invaſion of England, by the conſtable, at Treguier in Brittany, and by the count de St. Pol, the lord de Coucy and the admiral of France at Harfleur. They had under their command ſix thouſand men at arms, two thouſand croſs-bows and ſix thouſand luſty varlets, whom they intended to land at Dover and Orwell. It was ordered, that no one was to embark unleſs he were provided with ſuitable armour and proviſion for three months. They were the flower of chivalry, and had plenty of oats and hay for their horſes. Their leaders had appointed a day for ſailing, which was now almoſt arrived; and their ſervants were as buſily employed as at Sluys in laying in all ſtores and other neceſſaries at the two ports of Treguier and Harfleur. The men at arms,

arms, under the count de St. Pol and the admiral, were paid fifteen days in advance; but they were ſtill on ſhore, and thoſe in the more diſtant parts were daily arriving.

All things were now in ſuch forwardneſs, no one could have imagined it would not take place. It was not, however, broken up by the captains, but by a moſt extraordinary event which happened in Brittany. The king of France and his council were ſorely vexed thereat; but, as they could not amend it, they were forced to endure it as well as they could, and act prudently, for this was not the moment of revenge. Other news was brought to the king from Germany, at the ſame time, which I will relate in proper time and place; but I will mention that of Brittany firſt, as it ſo occurred in point of time, and was the moſt unfortunate, though the events in Germany were cauſe of greater expenſe.

If I were merely to ſay, ſuch and ſuch things happened at ſuch times, without entering fully into the matter, which was grandly horrible and diſaſtrous, it would be a chronicle, but no hiſtory. I might, to be ſure, paſs it by, if I had choſen it: that I will not do, but relate fully the fact, if God grant me life, abilities and leiſure to chronicle and hiſtorify the matter at length. You have before ſeen, in different parts of this hiſtory, how ſir John de Montfort, called duke of Brittany (who indeed was ſo by conqueſt, though not by direct deſcent), had always ſupported the Engliſh to the utmoſt of his power againſt France.

He

He had reaſon to attach himſelf to them, for they had made war for him, and without their aſſiſtance he would never have conquered before Auray nor elſewhere. You know alſo, from this hiſtory, that the duke of Brittany had no power over the greater part of his nobles nor the principal towns; more eſpecially ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, as long as he lived, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, the lords de Beaumanoir, de Laval, de Rais, de Dinant, the viſcount de Rohan and the lord de Rochefort, refuſed him obedience; and whichever way theſe lords incline the whole duchy follow their example. They were willing, indeed, to ſupport him againſt any power but France; and truly I muſt ſay, that the Bretons have ever gallantly defended the honour of France, as will be apparent to any perſon who ſhall read this hiſtory.

But let it not be ſaid, that I have been corrupted by the favour of count Guy de Blois (who has induced me to undertake, and has paid me for this hiſtory to my ſatisfaction), becauſe he was nephew to the rightful duke of Brittany; for count Lewis of Blois was couſin-german to St. Charles, who as long as he lived was the true duke. It is not ſo; for I will ſpeak the truth, and go ſtraight forward, without colouring one ſide more than another, and that gallant prince who patroniſed this hiſtory never wiſhed me in any way to act otherwiſe.

To return to my ſubject. You have read how the duke of Brittany, when he found he could not manage

manage his ſubjects, became ſuſpicious of them, and fearful leſt they ſhould arreſt him and confine him in one of the king of France's priſons. He left Brittany for England, with his houſehold and the lady Jane his ducheſs, daughter of that good knight ſir Thomas Holland. After ſtaying there ſome time, he went to Flanders, where he reſided, with his couſin-german count Lewis, upwards of a year and half, when his country, being more favourable, ſent for him back. Some of the towns, however, on his return, continued their rebellion, eſpecially Nantes; but all the barons, knights and prelates ſubmitted to him, except thoſe whom I have before named.

In order to put them under his obedience, by means of ſome of the principal cities which aſſented to his plans, and for the purpoſe of giving alarm to the king of France and his council who were deſirous of laying taxes on Brittany ſimilar to thoſe of France and Picardy, which he and the country would never ſuffer, he demanded aid from the king of England of men at arms and archers, aſſuring the council of England, that if the king or one of his uncles would come to Brittany, in ſufficient force, the whole country would be open, and ready to receive them.

King Richard and his council were greatly pleaſed on receiving this intelligence, which ſeemed to them ſo good, that they could not do better than accept the offer, ſince Brittany was ſo well inclined to receive them. They ordered thither the earl of Buckingham, with four thou-

ſand

ſand ſpears and eight thouſand archers, who, having landed at Calais, marched through the kingdom of France without meeting any oppoſition, although they frequently offered battle, as you have before read. When they came to Brittany, they expected to find all ready to receive them, as they had indeed ſuſtained a long march, but every thing was contrary to what had been promiſed; for the duke's adviſers had managed with ſo much prudence, that they had made his peace with the young king of France: had Charles V. been alive, it could not have been done, for he hated him too much. The duke of Burgundy, who was, at that time, at the head of the government of France, was greatly inſtrumental in bringing this accommodation about through the entreaties of his ducheſs, who was very nearly related to the duke of Brittany. He was, in conſequence, forced to break all the engagements he had made with the Engliſh, from the impoſſibility of his keeping them; for Bretons will never firmly join the Engliſh in making war on France. They never had, nor ever will have, ſuch inclinations. The Engliſh were obliged to lodge themſelves in Vannes and its neighbourhood, and to ſuffer the greateſt diſtreſs and poverty, which deſtroyed many of their men, and all their horſes.

When they left Brittany, they were greatly diſcontented with the duke, more particularly the earl of Buckingham, who, on his return to England, made ſuch heavy complaints againſt him

to

to the king, the duke of Lancaſter and the council, that it was reſolved by them to give John of Brittany his liberty, and carry him to Brittany, to wage war againſt the duke under his name. It was there ſaid,—'Sir John de Montfort knows well that he owes his duchy ſolely to us, for without our aid he never could have gained it; and a pretty return he has made us, by wearing our army down with fatigue and famine, and fruitleſsly expending our treaſure. We muſt make him feel for his ingratitude; and we cannot better revenge ourſelves than by ſetting his rival at liberty, and landing him in that country, where the towns and caſtles will open their gates to him, and expel the other who has thus deceived us.'

This reſolution was unanimouſly adopted. John of Brittany was brought before the council, and told they would give him his liberty, regain for him the duchy of Brittany, and marry him to the lady Philippa of Lancaſter, on condition that Brittany ſhould be held as a fief from England, and that he would do the king homage for it. He refuſed compliance with theſe terms. He would, indeed, have accepted the lady, but peremptorily refuſed to enter into any engagements inimical to France, were he to remain priſoner all his days. The council, hearing this, grew cool in their offers of freedom, and replaced him under the guard of ſir Thomas d'Ambreticourt. This I have already related, but I now return to it, on account of the event which happened in Brittany, as being the conſequence; for the duke, well aware he was in diſgrace with all England,

was

was greatly alarmed at the dangers that might enſue, from the treatment the earl of Buckingham and his army were forced to put up with, from the breach of all his engagements. Neither the king of England nor his uncles longer wrote him ſuch friendly letters as they were uſed to do before the earl of Buckingham's expedition. His alarms were much increaſed when he heard that John of Brittany was returned from England, and ſaid, the Engliſh had given him his liberty in revenge for his late conduct.

The duke upon this determined, by one bold ſtroke, to recover the favour of England, and to do it ſo ſecretly and opportunely that the Engliſh ſhould thank him. He knew there was not a man on earth whom they more hated and dreaded than ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France; for, in truth, his thoughts were daily and nightly employed on the means to injure England. He was the propoſer of the late great armament at Sluys, and the chief director of thoſe carried on at Treguier and Harfleur. The duke, therefore, to pleaſe the Engliſh, and to ſhew he had not much dependance on, nor love for the French, reſolved to prevent the intended invaſion of England taking effect: not, indeed, by forbidding his ſubjects to join in this attack on England, under pain of forfeiting their lands, for that would have too clearly diſcovered the ſide to which he leaned. He went to work more ſecretly, and thought he could not act more to his advantage than to arreſt the conſtable, and put him to death, for which the Engliſh would thank

thank him, as they hated him much. He was not afraid of his family, as it was not powerful enough to make war againſt him; for he had but two daughters, one married to John of Brittany, and the other to the viſcount de Rohan. He could eaſily withſtand them; and, as there would be but one baron ſlain, when dead, none would make war for him.

CHAP. XXXVII.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY SUMMONS HIS BARONS AND KNIGHTS TO A COUNCIL AT VANNES.—SIR OLIVER DE CLISSON, AND THE LORD DE BEAUMANOIR ARE MADE PRISONERS IN THE CASTLE OF ERMINE, AND IN GREAT DANGER OF THEIR LIVES.

THE duke of Brittany, to accompliſh his plan, appointed a great parliament to be holden at Vannes, and ſent very affectionate letters to his barons and knights, to entreat they would be preſent; but he was particularly preſſing with the conſtable of France, adding, that he was more anxious to ſee him than all the reſt. The conſtable never thought of excuſing himſelf, for the duke was now his acknowledged lord, and he wiſhed to be in his favour: he came therefore to Vannes, as did great numbers of other barons. The aſſembly was numerous, and laſted ſome time; and many things were diſcuſſed which concerned the duke and the country, but the intended invaſion of England was never touched on,

on, for the duke pretended to know nothing about it, and kept a ſtrict ſilence. The parliament was held in the caſtle de la Motte at Vannes, where the duke gave a grand dinner to the barons of Brittany, and kept them in enjoyment and affectionate converſation until night, when they returned to their lodgings, in the ſuburbs without the town. At this dinner were the greater part of the barons of Brittany, towards the end of which the duke ſhewed them the moſt friendly attention; but he had other thoughts in his heart, unknown to all excepting thoſe to whom he had confidentially opened himſelf.

The conſtable of France, to pleaſe the knights of Brittany, and becauſe he thought his office required it, invited all who had dined with the duke to dine with him on the morrow. Some came, but others went home to take leave of their wives and families; for it was the intention of the conſtable, on leaving Vannes, to make for Treguier and embark on board his fleet, which was ready for him. All this the duke knew, but never ſaid one word; for he wiſhed to have it believed that he was ignorant of it.

When the duke entered the hôtel of the conſtable, and was announced, all roſe up, as was right, and kindly received him in the manner in which their lord ſhould be accoſted. He behaved in the moſt friendly manner, and, ſeating himſelf among them, eat and drank, and ſhewed them ſtronger marks of affection than he had ever before done. He ſaid,—'My fair ſirs, friends and companions, God ſend that you may ever come and go from me with

with equal pleaſure, and that you may perform ſuch deeds of arms as may ſatisfy you and gain you profit and renown.' 'May God,' they replied, 'render you the fame, and we moſt humbly thank you that you are thus kindly come to ſee us before we depart.'

You muſt know, that in theſe days, the duke of Brittany was building a very handſome and ſtrong caſtle near Vannes, called the caſtle of Ermine, which was almoſt completed. Being eager to catch the conſtable, he ſaid to him, the lord de Beaumanoir and other barons,—'My dear ſirs, I entreat that before you quit this country, you will come and ſee my caſtle of Ermine, that you may view what I have done, and the plans I intend executing.' They all accepted his invitation; for, his behaviour had been ſo kind and open, that they never thought he was imagining miſchief. They accompanied the duke on horſeback to this caſtle; and, when arrived, the duke, the conſtable, the lords de Laval and de Beaumanoir diſmounted and entered within its apartments. The duke led the conſtable by the hand from chamber to chamber, and to all parts, even to the cellars, where wine was offered. When he had carried them all over it, they came to the keep; and, ſtopping at the entrance, the duke ſaid,—'Sir Oliver, there is not a man on this ſide of the ſea who underſtands maſonry like you: enter, therefore, I beg of you, and examine the walls well; and, if you ſay it is properly built, it ſhall remain, otherwiſe it ſhall be altered.' The conſtable, who

thought nothing ill was intended, replied, he would cheerfully do ſo, and deſired the duke to go firſt. 'No,' ſaid the duke: 'go by yourſelf, while I talk a little here with the lord de Laval.'

The conſtable, deſirous to acquit himſelf, entered the tower and aſcended the ſtaircaſe. When he had paſſed the firſt floor, ſome armed men, who had been there poſted in ambuſh, knowing how they were to act, ſhut the door below them, and advanced on the conſtable, whom they ſeized, and dragged into an apartment, and loaded him with three pairs of fetters. As they were putting them on, they ſaid,—'My lord, forgive what we are doing; for we are obliged to it by the ſtrict orders we have had from the duke of Brittany*.' If the conſtable was alarmed, it is no wonder; but he ought not to have been ſurpriſed, for, ſince the quarrel which he had had with the duke, he would never come near him, though many invitations and paſſports were ſent. He was fearful of truſting himſelf with the duke, in which he was juſtified; for, when he did come, you ſee the conſequences of the duke's hatred, which now burſt out.

When the lord de Laval, who was at the entrance of the tower, heard and ſaw the door ſhut with violence, he was afraid of ſome plot againſt

* Theſe excuſes were afterwards of no avail; for the conſtable puniſhed them according to their deſerts. He only pardoned a ſquire, named Bernard, who had the humanity to give him his cloak, to preſerve him from the dampneſs of the place.—*Hiſt. de Bretagne.*

his

his brother-in-law; and, turning to the duke, who looked as pale as death, was confirmed ſomething was wrong. He ſaid,—'Ah, my lord, for God's ſake what are they doing? Do not uſe any violence againſt the conſtable.' 'Lord de Laval, mount your horſe, and go hence, for you may depart when you pleaſe: I know well what I am about.' 'My lord,' replied the lord de Laval, 'I will never depart without my brother-in-law the conſtable.' At theſe words, the lord de Beaumanoir (whom the duke greatly hated) came and aſked where the conſtable was. The duke, drawing his dagger, advanced to him and ſaid, 'Beaumanoir, doſt thou wiſh to be like thy maſter?' 'My lord,' replied Beaumanoir, 'I believe my maſter cannot but be in a good plight.' 'I aſk thee again, if thou wouldſt wiſh to be like him.' 'Yes, my lord,' ſaid de Beaumanoir. The duke then taking his dagger by the point, ſaid,—'Well then, Beaumanoir, ſince thou wouldſt be like him, thou muſt thruſt one of thy eyes out*.' The lord de Beaumanoir, ſeeing, from the duke's countenance, things were taking a bad turn, caſt himſelf on his knee and ſaid,—'My lord, I have that opinion of your honour and nobleneſs of mind, that, if it pleaſe God, you will never act otherwiſe than right. We are at your mercy, and are come hither ſolely to accompany you, and at your own requeſt: do not therefore diſ-

* Alluding to the conſtable having but one eye. He loſt it at the battle of Auray; notwithſtanding which, he never quitted the field of battle.

honour yourſelf, by executing any wild ſcheme, if ſuch be in your thoughts, for you may hereafter repent of it.'

'Go, go,' replied the duke: 'thou ſhalt have neither better nor worſe than him.' He was then arrested, by thoſe who had previouſly received their orders, dragged into a room, and fettered with three pairs of irons. He was much alarmed, as you may ſuppoſe, for he knew the duke loved him as little as he did the conſtable, but he could not then help it.

News was ſoon ſpread through the caſtle and town, that the conſtable and the lord Beaumanoir had been arreſted and confined; but it ſurpriſed many that the lord de Laval was not confined with them; and that the duke had allowed him to depart when he pleaſed. The conſtable's impriſonment aſtoniſhed all who heard it; and not without cauſe; for it was ſaid, the duke's hatred was ſo ſtrong, he would have him and his companion put to death.

The duke was exceedingly blamed by all knights and ſquires who heard of this: they ſaid,—'That no prince had ever diſhonoured himſelf ſo much as the duke of Brittany. He invites the conſtable to dine with him, who accepts the invitation, goes to his palace and drinks of his wine. He is then requeſted to view his buildings, wherein he is arreſted: never was the like heard of. What does the duke think to do with him? He has rendered himſelf infamous, for never was there a more diſgraceful act; and, henceforward, no one will

have

have confidence in princes, ſince the duke has thus played the traitor, and, by treacherous means, enticed theſe gallant men into his caſtle, wherein he impriſons them. What will the king of France ſay to this? and eſpecially as the conſequence must be that he must give up the intended invaſion of England. Never was ſuch wickedneſs thought of. At preſent he has diſcovered what was rankling in his heart. Did any one in Brittany, or elſewhere, ever hear of the like? If a poor knight had done ſo, he would have been for ever diſgraced. In whom can any man place confidence but in his lord, who is bounden to act uprightly, and redreſs ſuch wrongs as his vaſſals may complain of? Who can take upon him to punish this deed, or, who is capable of it, but the king of France? The duke now openly shews his attachment to the English, and that he means to aſſiſt them, by thus preventing the expedition against them taking effect. What ought the knights and ſquires of Brittany at this moment to do? Why, they should inſtantly leave their homes, and haſten to lay ſiege to the caſtle of Ermine, and incloſe the duke within it, and never depart until they have taken him, dead or alive, and carried him, like a falſe and diſloyal prince, to the king of France, for him to punish him according to his deſerts.'

Thus did thoſe knights ſpeak, who had been at the parliament, and who had not left Vannes and that part of the country; but they were much afraid leſt the duke ſhould put them to

to death. Others ſaid,—'The lord de Laval is ſtill with the duke, and will prevent it; for he is ſo wiſe and prudent, he will check the duke's rage.' In effect, he did ſo; for, had he not exerted himſelf to the utmoſt, there is not a doubt but that the conſtable would have been murdered that night, had he had a thouſand lives.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE CONSTABLE DE CLISSON, THROUGH THE EXERTIONS OF THE LORD DE LAVAL, OBTAINS HIS LIBERTY, BY PAYING A LARGE SUM OF MONEY, AND DELIVERING UP TO THE DUKE OF BRITTANY SOME OF HIS CASTLES.

IT may be readily believed, that the conſtable was not at his eaſe, when he found himſelf thus entrapped and ironed. He was guarded by thirty men, who were unable to comfort him, for they could only obey their lord's orders. In his own mind, he conſidered himſelf as a dead man: for he had not the moſt diſtant hope of any aſſiſtance coming to him. He had his fetters taken thrice from him, and was ſtretched on the floor; for the duke, at one time, would have him beheaded, at another drowned; and one or other of theſe deaths he would certainly have ſuffered, if it had not been for the lord de Laval. When he heard the duke give orders for the conſtable's death, he flung himſelf on his knees, and, with uplifted hands and tears, ſaid; 'Ah, my lord, for

for God's mercy, think better of this matter: do not act ſo cruelly againſt my brother-in-law the conſtable. He cannot have deſerved death. Through kindneſs, tell me what it is that has ſo mightily angered you againſt him. I ſwear, that whatever may be his crime, he ſhall make ſuch amends, in body and eſtate, or I for him, or both of us together, as ſhall ſurpaſs any thing you may imagine, or condemn him to, excepting death or impriſonment. Remember, for God's ſake, my lord, how you were educated together in the ſame hôtel with the duke of Lancaſter, who is ſo loyal and gallant a prince, none ever was, nor will be his equal. For God's mercy, remember, my lord, how, in former times, before he had made his peace with France, he had always ſerved you loyally; he aſſiſted you in the recovery of your duchy; and you ever found him ready to ſupport you in the field and in council. If you have not any very juſt cauſe indeed, that moves your paſſion, he cannot be deſerving death.'

'Lord de Laval,' replied the duke, 'allow me to act as I pleaſe. Cliſſon has ſo frequently angered me, that it is now neceſſary I make him feel it. Go your ways, I want nothing with you: let me ſhew my cruelty; for I am reſolved he ſhall die.' 'Ah, my lord,' replied the lord de Laval, 'moderate you rage, and hear reaſon. If you thus put him to death, no prince will ever ſo completely diſgrace himſelf; and there will not be a knight, ſquire, nor honeſt man in all Brittany, who will not mortally hate you,

and

do every thing they can to drive you out of your duchy. Neither the king of England nor his council will thank you; and would you thus diſgrace yourſelf for the life of one man? For the love of God, change your intention, as the one you want to carry into effect is not only good for nothing but diſhonourable. It would be infamous thus to put to death ſo great a baron and ſo gallant a knight as the lord de Cliſſon; and ſhould you do ſo, it will be conſidered as traitorous, and a reproach to you before God and by all the world. You invited him to dine with you: he came. You then ſeek for him, in the moſt friendly manner, and deſire him to accompany you to ſee your buildings: he does ſo: he obeys your every command, and drinks of your wine; and is all this affection you ſhew him but a veil to cover your treachery, and the means to rob him of his life? Should you do ſo, no lord will be ever ſo diſgraced: all the world will deteſt you, reproach you for it, and make war upon you. But, ſince your hatred is ſo violent againſt the conſtable, I will tell you how you ſhall act: you ſhall give him his liberty for a large ſum of florins. This you may compound for; and, ſhould he hold any caſtle that you claim as yours, he ſhall deliver it up; and I will be his ſecurity for the due performance of whatever you may agree to.'

When the duke of Brittany heard the lord de Laval thus addreſs him, and never for one moment quit his preſence, for he followed him the whole night: he paused a while, and, being, ſomewhat

ſomewhat cooled, ſaid,—'Lord de Laval, you have been of the greateſt ſervice to your brother-in-law; for know that he is the man whom I hate the moſt in the world, and, if you had not been here, he ſhould not have been alive tomorrow morning: but your eloquence has ſaved him. Go to him, and aſk if he be willing to pay down one hundred thouſand francs; for I will have no other ſecurity but the money; and ſurrender to me three caſtles and one town, ſuch as Château Broc, Château Joſſelin, le Blanc, and the town of Jugon. When he ſhall pay his ranſom, and put me, or thoſe I may ſend thither in poſſeſſion of theſe places, I will give him his liberty*. 'My lord,' replied the lord de Laval, 'I give you a thouſand thanks for having ſo graciouſly liſtened to my entreaties: be aſſured that all you aſk ſhall be granted: the town and caſtles ſhall be given up, and the money paid before he leave this place.'

The lord de Laval was rejoiced beyond meaſure when he found his brother thus freed from priſon and death. He had the gate of the tower opened, which could not be done but by the duke's order, and, mounting the ſtaircaſe, found the conſtable much alarmed (for he was expecting every moment to be put to death), and

* The hiſtorian of Brittany, dom Morice, mentions the following caſtles and places which the duke inſiſted on having, with the hundred thouſand francs, for the ranſom of the conſtable: Joſſelin, Lamballe, Broon, Jugon, Blein, Guingamp, La Rochederrien, Chaſtellaudren, Cliſſon, and Château-gui, which were ſtrong places, ſome belonging to the conſtable, and others to John of Brittany, count de Penthievre.

chained

chained down with three pairs of fetters; but, when he saw the lord de Laval, his heart revived, for he imagined some treaty had been entered into. The lord de Laval said to the guards,—'Unfetter my brother Cliffon, and then I shall talk with him;' and addressing himself to the constable,—'Dear brother, will you consent to whatever I may have done?' 'Yes, brother,' replied the constable. At these words his irons were taken off. The lord de Laval took him aside, and said,—'Brother, I have, with much difficulty, saved your life; but it is on condition, that you pay down, before you leave this place, one hundred thousand francs, and surrender to the duke three castles and your town of Jugon, otherwise you will not have your liberty.' 'I agree to all this,' replied the constable. 'You are in the right, brother,' said the lord de Laval. 'But,' said the constable, 'who will go to Cliffon and elsewhere to collect the money? I believe, fair brother de Laval, you must undertake this.' 'No,' replied the lord de Laval: 'I will never quit this castle until I have you with me; for I too well know the duke's cruel disposition; and he may repent of his bargain when I am gone, by some foolish conversation he may hear concerning you, and the whole be broken off.' 'And whom then can we send thither?' asked the constable. 'The lord de Beaumanoir,' replied his brother-in-law: 'we will send him, for he is a prisoner like yourself, and he shall undertake to collect the whole.' 'Well,' said the constable, 'go down stairs, and order whatever you shall think for the best.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

THE LORD DE BEAUMANOIR IS SET AT LIBERTY BY THE DUKE OF BRITTANY, THAT HE MAY COLLECT THE RANSOM FOR THE CONSTABLE, WHO OBTAINS HIS FREEDOM ON SURRENDERING THE PLACES AGREED ON.—THE IMPRISONMENT OF THE CONSTABLE IS KNOWN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE.

THE lord de Laval lost no time in going to the chamber of the duke, who was undreſſing himſelf for bed, as he had not ſlept the whole night. On his entrance he bowed, and ſaid,—'My lord, you muſt ſet at liberty the lord de Beaumanoir, that brother Cliſſon may talk with him; for it is he who muſt go for the money, and give your people poſſeſſion of the caſtles and town. 'Well,' replied the duke, 'let his irons be taken off, and put them in an apartment together: I ſhall look to you for the performance of the treaty, as I do not wiſh to ſee them; and, when I ſhall have ſlept a little, return to me again, and we will talk more on the ſubject.' 'Very well, my lord' ſaid the lord de Laval, and quitted the chamber, accompanied by two knights, who conducted him to the place where the lord de Beaumanoir was confined. He was in hourly expectation of being put to death; and, when the door opened (as he owned afterwards), he thought they were come to lead him to execution.

tion. On ſeeing the lord de Laval, his ſpirits were raiſed, and ſtill more when he ſaid, 'Lord de Beaumanoir, rejoice: your liberty is granted.' On this his fetters were taken off, and he was led into an apartment, whither the conſtable was alſo conducted, and placed between them. Wine and plenty of proviſion were brought, and the whole of the houſehold were much pleaſed when they heard how matters were going on, and that all would end well. They had very unwillingly witneſſed what had been done to the conſtable and the lord de Beaumanoir; but they could not help it, bound as they were to obey their lord's orders, right or wrong.

From the time the drawbridge had been raiſed, and the gates ſhut, no perſon whatever had entered the caſtle; for the keys were in the duke's chamber until he was awakened, which was not ſooner than nine o'clock, when he aroſe. This alarmed thoſe ſquires and varlets who were waiting without, and they knew not what to think of it. News of what had paſſed was already carried to Treguier, where they ſaid,—'Do you know what has happened? The duke of Brittany has impriſoned, in his caſtle of Ermine, the conſtable of France, the lord de Laval and the lord de Beaumanoir, and, it is ſuppoſed, will murder them, if he has not already done it.' Knights and ſquires were aſtoniſhed, and deplored the event, ſaying,—'Our expedition is at an end, for we ſhall loſe the fine weather. Ah, conſtable! how unfortunate have you been to ſuffer weak counſel to deceive you. The parliament

ment held at Vannes was purpoſely to entrap you. Your opinion formerly of the duke was ſuch that you ſaid, if he were to ſend you five hundred aſſurances of ſafety, you would never truſt yourſelf with him, ſo ſtrong were our ſuſpicions then; but now you ſimply accompany him alone, and are miſerably paid for it?

The whole duchy of Brittany bewailed the treatment of the conſtable, and knew not how to act. The knights and ſquires of the fleet ſaid,—'Why do we ſtay here? why do we not go and inveſt the duke in his caſtle of Ermine? and, if he ſhould have put the conſtable to death, confine him: if he detain him in priſon, why do we not remain there until we have ſet him free; for Brittany has never ſuffered ſuch a loſs as now, by the capture of the conſtable.'

Such weré the different converſations that paſſed; but no one moved, as they were waiting for further intelligence; and all were running to different quarters in ſearch of it. Within two days, the king of France and his uncles were informed of what had happened to the conſtable, to their great aſtoniſhment. The duke of Bourbon had then left the court and was at Avignon, on his way to Caſtille, as he was deſirous of firſt ſeeing the pope. He, however, heard of it when at Lyon with the count de Savoye.

The count de St. Pol, the lord de Coucy and the admiral of France, were on the point of embarking at Harfleur, when they learnt how the duke of Brittany had, by a trick, impriſoned the conſtable and the lord de Beaumanoir; and

that

that it was currently believed in Brittany he had put them to death, for he hated them mortally. Theſe lords were ſo thunderſtruck at the intelligence, that they ſaid,—'Our expedition is at an end: let us diſband our men at arms, and make for Paris, where we ſhall know from the king what he would have us do.' 'It is well that we ſhould go to Paris,' replied the admiral; 'but there is not any neceſſity for diſmiſſing all our men at arms. Perhaps they may be wanted elſewhere, in Caſtille, whither the duke of Bourbon is gone, or in Brittany againſt this duke. Do you imagine the king of France will quietly ſuffer what he has done? No, by God: he will never eſcape without loſing two hundred thouſand florins at leaſt, for the indignity he has ſhewn a conſtable of France; and he will be lucky if he come off ſo well. Was ever any thing heard or ſeen like this conduct? which has ruined the king's expedition, and prevented him from annoying his enemies. Let us ſtay where we are for two or three days, when we ſhall hear ſomething more from Brittany or Paris.'

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY DICTATES THE TERMS OF THE TREATIES, FOR THE SURRENDER OF DIFFERENT PLACES BY THE CONSTABLE.—THE EXPEDITIONS FROM TREGUIER AND HARFLEUR ARE BROKEN UP.—THE CONSTABLE, ON HIS DELIVERANCE, MAKES HIS COMPLAINT TO THE KING OF FRANCE, AND RESIGNS TO HIM HIS OFFICE OF CONSTABLE.

I WILL now return to the duke of Brittany. When he had repoſed a little, he aroſe, dreſſed himſelf, and ſent for the lord de Laval to his chamber, with whom he held a long converſation. A treaty was then written down, as the duke dictated, to bind the conſtable to the complete ſurrender of the places before mentioned, and to ſettle them on the duke and his heirs, abſolutely and without appeal, which treaty was to be ſealed by the conſtable.

The lord de Beaumanoir was ordered by the conſtable to go to his caſtles and town to diſmiſs all his officers, and give poſſeſſion to thoſe whom the duke might ſend thither. With the ſurrender of all theſe places, it was neceſſary, likewiſe, to pay down one hundred thouſand francs. On the gates being opened, the lord de Beaumanoir departed, accompanied by ſome of the duke's people, to fulfil the orders of the conſtable, who entreated

treated him to make all ſpeed for his deliverance. By them Vannes and the country, which was beginning to be in motion, learnt that the conſtable was not in danger of his life, having been ranſomed. All thoſe attached to him were greatly rejoiced; and ſuch knights and ſquires as had taken it up the moſt warmly remained quiet; but, had matters been otherwiſe, they were determined to ſurround the caſtle of Ermine and incloſe the duke within it, and would never have done any thing with more willingneſs.

News is ſoon ſpread abroad, on wings more ſpeedy than the wind. The three barons of Harfleur were informed that the conſtable was out of danger of being murdered, but that he had very narrowly eſcaped; and was obliged, to ſave his life, to ſurrender three of his caſtles and a town, beſides paying down as a ranſom one hundred thouſand francs. In their converſations, they ſaid,—'Things now go well, ſince his life is ſafe: as for his caſtles and ranſom, the conſtable will ſoon regain them; and the king has enough for him, ſhould he want any money. It is over: our expedition is put an end to; and we may now diſband our people and go to Paris, to learn from the king what is to be done; for we know that all the armaments at Treguier are countermanded, which is a ſure ſign that nothing will be attempted this ſeaſon, and with reaſon; for the conſtable will be ſolely occupied to revenge himſelf for the inſult the duke of Brittany has put upon him.'

Theſe three lords, having diſmiſſed all the men at arms and croſs-bows that were in and about Harfleur,

fleur, took the road for Paris, where the king reſided.

The lord de Beaumanoir was ſo active, that, within four days, he put the duke's officers in the poſſeſſion of the three caſtles and the town of Jugon, to the ſatisfaction of the duke. He afterwards collected the amount of the ranſom, and paid it according to the duke's pleaſure. When this was all done, the lord de Laval ſaid to the duke,—'My lord, you have now received the whole of your demands; the three caſtles and Jugon, and one hundred thouſand francs, deliver up to me, therefore, my brother-in-law, the conſtable.' 'Willingly,' replied the duke: 'let him depart: I give him his liberty.' The conſtable was then given up, and inſtantly ſet out, with the lord de Laval, from the caſtle of Ermine*.

When

* This conduct of the duke of Brittany is differently related by dom Morice, the hiſtorian of Brittany, by which it appears that the conſtable very narrowly eſcaped death.

The duke called to him ſir John de Bazvalen, in whom he had the greateſt confidence, and ordered him to put the conſtable to death, at midnight, as privately as poſſible. Bazvalen repreſented in vain the conſequences that would enſue, for the duke ſaid he had reſolved on it, and would have it done. During the night, his paſſion being calmer, he repented having given ſuch orders, and, at day-break, ſent for Bazvalen, and aſked if his orders had been obeyed. On being anſwered in the affirmative, the duke cried out, 'How, is Cliſſon dead?' 'Yes, my lord: he was drowned this night, and his body is buried in a garden.' 'Alas!' replied the duke, 'this is a moſt pitiful good morrow. Would

When they were at liberty, the conſtable made no long ſtay in Brittany, but, mounting a good courſer, and attended ſolely by a page, made ſuch haſte, as to arrive at Paris in two days. He diſmounted at his own hôtel, and inſtantly waited on the king and his uncles at the Louvre. His ſervants and equipage followed him in handſome array. The court had already been informed of his deliverance, but they knew not that he was ſo near. The doors of the king's apartments were, according to orders opened to him; and, when in the preſence of the king, he caſt himſelf on his knees, and ſaid,—'Moſt redoubted lord, your father (may God pardon his ſins) appointed me conſtable of France, which office I have truly executed, to the beſt of my abilities, and there never has been any complaint made againſt me. If any one, excepting yourſelf and my lords your uncles, ſhall ſay to the contrary, or that I have acted otherwiſe than moſt

---

to God, ſir John, I had believed what you urged againſt it. I ſee that from henceforward all comfort is loſt to me. Quit my preſence, and never again let me ſee your face.'

After the knight had allowed him to ſuffer for ſome time the pains of his remorſe, he returned and ſaid, 'My lord, as I know the cauſe of your miſery, I believe I can provide a remedy; for there is a cure for all things.' 'Not for death,' replied the duke. Bazvalen then told him, that foreſeeing the conſequences and the remorſe he would feel if his orders, then given from paſſion, were obeyed, he had not executed his commands, and that the conſtable was alive.

The lord de Laval then entered, and the remainder is nearly as Froiſſart relates it.

loyally

loyally towards you and the crown of France, I will throw him my glove for him to prove it.'

Neither the king nor any other perſon made reply to this ſpeech. Upon which the conſtable added,—'Moſt noble lord and king, it has happened in Brittany, that while I was executing the duties of your office, the duke had me arreſted and confined in his caſtle of Ermine; and would have put me to death, without any other cauſe than his own outrageous will, if God, and brother de Laval, had not aſſiſted me. To deliver myſelf from his hands, I was conſtrained to ſurrender to him three ſtrong caſtles and a handſome town, beſides one hundred thouſand francs paid down. This inſult and loſs, which the duke of Brittany has put on me, moſt nearly concerns your royal majeſty; for the invaſion of England, which I and my companions were eager to attempt, is now put an end to, I therefore reſign into your hands the office of conſtable, for you to make ſuch proviſion in the matter as you may pleaſe: I will not longer hold what I cannot gain any honour by.'

'Conſtable,' replied the king, 'we have before heard the great inſult you have ſuffered, which has been very much to our prejudice as well as to that of the country. We ſhall ſummon our peers of France, and conſider how we ſhould act in ſuch a caſe. Do not you trouble yourſelf about the matter; for you ſhall have ample juſtice done by us, whatever may be the conſequences.' He then took the conſtable by the hand, and made him riſe, ſaying,—

'Constable, we will not that you thus reſign your office, but that you continue to exerciſe its functions until we order otherwiſe.'

The conſtable again flung himſelf on his knees and ſaid,—'Dear ſire, the inſult and diſgrace I have ſuffered from the duke of Brittany oppreſſes my mind ſo much, that I am unfit to hold the office, which is ſo conſiderable, that it requires the utmoſt attention. I am, beſides, obliged to give anſwers, and converſe with all manner of perſons who come to me on buſineſs; and, indeed, at this moment, I am not capable of giving the orders I ought: I beg of you, therefore, to accept it, and appoint another for a time; for I ſhall be always ready and willing to obey your commands.'

'Well, ſire,' ſaid the duke of Burgundy, 'he offers very handſomely: you will conſider of it.'

'That I will,' replied the king, who again made him riſe.

The conſtable advanced, reſpectfully, towards the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, to converſe with them on public affairs, and to inform them more particularly of what had paſſed in Brittany; for they were much intereſted in it, as they had the government of the kingdom. In the courſe of his converſation, the conſtable found they were more indifferent about the matter, than the king's anſwer made him believe; for they greatly blamed him for having gone to Vannes. He replied, he could not offer any excuſes for it. The duke of Burgundy added,—'How could you think of going thither,

thither, when your fleet, and the knights and squires, were ready, and waiting for you at Treguier? Beſides, when you were at Vannes, and had dined with him, why did you not return? for you had no buſineſs to remain there longer; and what could have induced you to attend him to his caſtle of Ermine?' 'My lord,' replied the conſtable, 'he ſhewed me ſo many attentions that I could not refuſe it.' 'Conſtable,' ſaid the duke of Burgundy, 'ſuch attentions are always deceitful: I thought you had been more cunning. You may now go: the buſineſs ſhall have a favourable end; and we will, at our leiſure, attend to it.'

The conſtable next addreſſed himſelf particularly to the duke of Berry, but ſoon diſcovered that theſe lords were more indifferent about him than the king, for not having acted according to their expectations: he therefore left the Louvre, and returned to his hôtel. Many great lords of the parliament and council came thither to viſit and comfort him: among the number were, the count de St. Pol, the lord de Coucy and the admiral of France, who ſaid,—'Conſtable, be not caſt down: you ſhall be amply revenged on the duke of Brittany, for he has now committed himſelf ſo ſtrongly by the inſult offered France that he may pay for it by the loſs of his duchy. Go, and amuſe yourſelf at your eſtate of Montlehery*, while we act for you here: the peers of France are ſum-

* Montlehery,—a town in the iſle of France, ſeven leagues from Paris.

moned,

moned, and things ſhall not remain as they are.'

The conſtable followed their advice, and went to Montlehery, having for a time ſurrendered his office. It was ſaid, that the lord Guy de la Trimouille was to ſucceed him; but it was not ſo: he was too prudent and wiſe ever to have accepted it over the head of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon.

CHAP XLI.

THE DUKE OF GUELDRES SENDS A CHALLENGE TO FRANCE, IN FAVOUR OF ENGLAND.

THE ſame week in which the news came to Paris of the conſtable's impriſonment, there was intelligence from Germany highly diſpleaſing to the king, his uncles and the council. The duke of Gueldres, ſon to the duke of Juliers, had entered into an alliance with England, to make war on France, and had accepted of a ſubſidy of four thouſand francs yearly. This penſion his father, the duke of Juliers, formerly poſſeſſed, but had renounced it; and the ſon, who was young, had taken it, at the ſolicitations of the king of England and his council, on condition he ſhould ſend his challenge to the king of France, and carry on a war againſt him to the utmoſt of his power. He was the more inclined to ſupport the Engliſh becauſe he was already at war with the duchefs

chefs and country of Brabant, which country was favourable to France, for the reverſion of it would fall to the duke of Burgundy and to his children.

The duke of Gueldres, to ſhew he was in earneſt and determined to act againſt France, ſent, during the time the news of the conſtable's misfortune was freſh, to defy the king of France, by letters ſealed with his ſeal, that were very bitter and wrothful. They were not accepted with pleaſure by the king nor his uncles, as I ſhall explain hereafter in the courſe of this hiſtory, when I ſpeak more fully of the wars of Brittany and Gueldres.

The king, however, ſhewed no outward ſigns of diſſatisfaction, but handſomely entertained the ſquire who had brought this challenge. He had been very much terrified at Tournay; for, having ſhewn the challenge to the provoſt and principal inhabitants, he wanted not to go further, ſaying that it was fully ſufficient to have delivered his commiſſion at ſo grand a city as Tournay. This did not ſatisfy the provoſt, though Tournay belonged to France, and he arreſted the ſquire and had him cloſely confined: he then wrote to the duke of Burgundy, to ſay what he had done, and to know his farther commands on the ſubject. The duke ordered the provoſt to conduct the ſquire to Paris, who certainly thought that now he could not eſcape death. It fell out otherwiſe, for the king, his uncles and the court graciouſly received

ceived him; and the king of France gave him a ſilver goblet weighing four marcs with fifty francs within it. He was well entertained, and, when he returned, had a good paſſport given to him.

The king and the whole court were much troubled on this matter, when the conſtable arrived to make his complaints againſt the duke of Brittany; and this increaſed it, for, it was now apparent, difficulties were ariſing on all ſides, and much prudence and good ſenſe would be neceſſary to meet them. The king and his council, notwithſtanding this vexation from Gueldres, were unwilling that the conſtable, who had ſo faithfully ſerved the king in Flanders and elſewhere, ſhould not have redreſs for the wrongs he had ſuffered from the duke of Brittany, by confining his perſon and ſeizing his caſtles and towns without a ſhadow of right. The lord de Coucy and the admiral were particularly active in this buſineſs.

We will return to the duke of Lancaſter and the king of Portugal, who were carrying on a proſperous war in Galicia, and ſpeak of their operations.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

TWO BRETON CAPTAINS, HAVING VALIANTLY DEFENDED THE TOWN OF ORENSE AGAINST THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, CAPITULATE ON TERMS OFFERED BY THE ENGLISH.

YOU have heard that the king and queen of Portugal were preſent at the tilt, between ſir John Holland and ſir Reginald de Roye, at Entença. The king, before he departed, told the duke of Lancaſter, that on his return to Oporto, he would, within ſix days, take the field, for that his men were now quite ready.

The duke ordered the lady Conſtance, his ducheſs, to remain at Sant Jago, under the guard of the lord Fitzwalter, a powerful Engliſh baron, with one hundred men at arms and two hundred archers, ſaying, on his quitting Entença,—'Lady, you will retire to the city of Compoſtella, while the king of Portugal, myſelf and army, ſeek our enemies in Caſtille and combat them wherever we may find them, and we ſhall then know if ever we be to poſſeſs any part of Castille.' The lady replied, 'God's will be done.' They then ſeparated for the preſent. The ducheſs was eſcorted out of danger by ſir Thomas Percy and ſir Evan Fitzwarren, with two hundred ſpears, who then returned to the duke. He had left Entença, and was marching towards a city in Galicia, called Orenſe, which would not acknowledge his claim to the crown.

The place was ſtrong, and had a garriſon of Bretons,

Bretons, who had undertaken the defence at their own riſk; and, as they expected the duke and his Engliſh would come thither, they had greatly added to its strength. The marſhal of the army had received frequent information, that thoſe of Orenſe had refuſed obedience to the duke, and were daily increaſing the fortifications of the place: he therefore, in conjunction with the constable, ſir John Holland, adviſed the duke to march thither.

When the army was tolerably near, it was halted and quartered thereabout. The firſt night was very fine and ſo wondrous hot (for it was about Aſcenſion-day), that the lords had their tents and pavilions pitched in the plain, under the beautiful olive-trees which were there. They remained within them all the night and following day, thinking the town would inſtantly ſurrender, without waiting to be aſſaulted. The townſmen would willingly have done ſo, if they had been the maſters, but ſome adventurous Bretons governed it. Two gallant captains from lower Brittany, one called the baſtard d'Aulroy, the other Pennefort, were the commanders. They were good men at arms, as it appeared, when they undertook to defend the town of Orenſe, without other aſſiſtance, againſt the army of the duke of Lancaſter.

On the third day, the Engliſh having well examined the place, to chooſe the weakeſt parts for their attacks, the conſtable, the marſhal and the admiral, ordered their trumpets to ſound for the aſſault. The army then armed itſelf, and aſſembled on the plain, when it was formed

formed in four diviſions, to make as many different attacks. They marched ſlowly and in handſome array, with trumpets ſounding before them, as far as the ditches, and halted. There was not any water in them; but there was a ſtrong paliſade in front of the walls, and ſo many thorns and brambles, that no man at arms could paſs through.

The attack, however, commenced at four places; and men at arms and luſty varlets croſſed the ditches with hatchets on their wriſts, with which they cleared away the thorns, to the utmoſt of their power. The Galicians annoyed them with lancing darts; and, had they not been well ſhielded, numbers muſt have been killed or wounded; but thoſe men at arms, who entered the ditch, were defended by their ſervants, bearing ſhields before them.

The Engliſh archers made ſuch good uſe of their bows, from the top of the ditch, that ſcarcely any dared to appear on the bulwarks.

The duke of Lancaſter came to view the attack, mounted on a very tall horſe, which the king of Portugal had given him, and to notice thoſe who behaved well, and was ſo delighted, that he ſtaid upwards of three hours. All the thorns and brambles were cleared away by this firſt attack, ſo that the paliſades might be approached. The retreat was ſounded; for the duke ſaid to the marſhal,—'Our men, ſir Thomas, have done enough for to-day: let them retire, for they muſt be now fatigued.' 'My lord, I am willing it ſhould be ſo,' replied the marſhal, and ordered the retreat. The army returned

returned to its quarters, carrying with them the dead and wounded, and there paſſed the night. They had plenty of wine, but it was ſo hot they could ſcarcely drink it; and, unleſs mixed with a great deal of water, thoſe who made too free with it were rendered unfit for any thing the enſuing day.

On the morrow, they determined, in council, that, on account of the exceſſive heat, the fatigues the army had ſuffered, and the conſequences of their having drank too much of this wine, there ſhould not be any attack made the whole day; but that, on the next day, they would renew the aſſault from before ſun-riſe, in the cool of the morning, until eight o'clock. Orders were iſſued for the army to remain quietly in camp, and no one to arm until the trumpet of the marſhal ſounded.

The duke of Lancaſter received this day intelligence from the king of Portugal. He had left Oporto, and was on his march towards Sanſaren, for he intended to enter Caſtille by that frontier, and the armies to join on the river Duero, and beſiege Beneventé or Vilalpando. Such was the plan of the king of Portugal, if, indeed, the king of Caſtille and his French allies, who were daily increaſing, did not march to oppoſe him. Should they make no oppoſition, nor ſhew any ſigns of offering battle, it was neceſſary the junction of the two armies be made as ſoon as poſſible. The duke was ſo well pleaſed with this news as to give the bearer of it ten nobles. On the appointed day, for the renewal of the attack, the marſhal's trumpet

ſounded

founded, at the firſt dawn of the morning. Knights and ſquires made inſtantly ready, and poſted themſelves under their banners and pennons; but it was upwards of an hour before they were all drawn up. The duke remained in his pavilion, and did not riſe thus early, for there was not any need of it. The marſhal advanced into the plain, knowing well the duties of his office; and thoſe ordered for the attack placed themſelves under his pennon.

News was ſpread through Orenſe, that the Engliſh were marching to the aſſault; for the Bretons, on guard, had diſcovered it from the ſounding of the marſhal's trumpet. The men and women of the town were on the alert; and the Bretons cried to them,—'Haſten to the bulwarks: be men of courage, and not frightened at what you may see; we are not frightened; for we know the place is very ſtrong, and we have plenty of darts, and well tempered lances, to repulſe our enemies, beſides ſtones and flints to caſt down on them: we know, alſo, that ſhould we be hard puſhed, they will receive us favourably; and that is the worſt we can ſuffer.'

'By God,' ſaid the captains who were preſent, 'we have been in many weaker places than this, and were never the worſe for it.'

The Galicians, whether they would or not, took courage from the exhortations of the Bretons. This would not have been the caſe if the Bretons had not been in the town; for they would have ſurrendered on the firſt ſummons. To ſay the truth, the common people of Caſtille

and

and Galicia are good for nothing in war: they are badly armed, and of poor courage. The nobles, who call themſelves gentlemen, are tolerably well; but they like better to prance about, ſpurring their horſes, than to be engaged in more ſerious matters.

The Engliſh arrived about ſun-riſe before Orenſe, and, having entered the ditch, which, though dry, was deep enough, advanced to the paliſades, with hatchets and iron bars, and began to break down and level them. When this was done, they had ſtill another ditch to croſs, before they could approach the wall, which was as wide as the other, and many parts full of mud; but they were indifferent to this, and ruſhing into it, came to the walls.

Thoſe on the battlements were not diſmayed at what they ſaw, but defended themſelves valiantly. They lanced darts at the enemy, the ſtroke of which is very deadly; and it required ſtrong armour to reſiſt their blows. The Engliſh, having prepared ladders the preceding day, had them brought and fixed to different parts of the walls; and you would have ſeen knights and ſquires, eager for renown, aſcend them with targets on their heads, and fight, ſword in hand, with the Bretons, who, in truth, defended themſelves gallantly; for I hold ſuch conduct valorous, in allowing themſelves to be ſo often attacked, knowing well they ſhould not have aſſiſtance from any quarter. The king of Caſtille, and the French knights had determined to permit the Engliſh to overrun Galicia, or any other parts,

parts, if they could, without offering them the chance of a general combat, and with this the Bretons had been made acquainted.

Some of the Engliſh ſaid,—'Ah, if all the towns in Caſtille give us as much trouble as this, we ſhall never have done.' Others replied,—'There is much to be pillaged within it, that has been brought thither from all parts; and it is this which induces them to make ſo obſtinate a reſiſtance, that they may ſurrender on terms, and preſerve their wealth and merchandiſe from being plundered.' Some aſked, 'Who are the captains?' 'They are two baſtard Bretons, good men at arms, who know what ſieges and aſſaults are, for they have been at many. Their names are the baſtard de Pennefort and the baſtard d'Aulroy.' 'Whoever they may be, they are valiant fellows thus to hold out, without any appearance of ſuccour coming to them.'

Thoſe who mounted the ladders were ſometimes repulſed ſo ſeverely, as to be tumbled to the ground, which cauſed much ſhouting among the Caſtillians.

When the duke of Lancaſter was riſen and had heard maſs, he ſaid he would go and view the attack. He mounted a courſer, but unarmed, and had his pennon, that was emblazoned with the arms of Caſtille, England and France, borne before him, which fluttered in the wind, ſo that the extremities touched the ground. On the duke's arrival, the beſiegers exerted themſelves the more, in order to be noticed and praiſed. The enemy, obſerving the pennon,

knew

knew the duke was come, and they alſo gained courage to continue the defence. Thus were both parties employed until it was eight o'clock; and there did not ſeem any probability that Orenſe would ſpeedily be won by ſuch attacks. The duke aſked who were the captains of the garriſon. On their being named, he ſaid,—'Tell the marſhal to treat with them; or ſend ſome one to know if they be willing to enter into a negotiation for ſurrendering the town, and placing it under our obedience. I do not believe that queſtion has been put to them. Go,' added he to one of his knights, 'ſir William, and bring the marſhal to ſpeak with me.'

The knight left the duke, rode to the marſhal, and ſaid, 'Sir Thomas, my lord wiſhes to ſpeak with you.' The marſhal went to him; and, when in his preſence, the duke ſaid,—'Marſhal, do you know whether theſe Bretons, who hold the place againſt us, would be willing to put themſelves under our obedience? We are fatiguing and wounding our men, and waſting our ammunition, when we know not how ſoon we may be in greater want of it. I therefore beg you will go and inform them you are willing to treat.'

'My lord,' replied ſir Thomas, 'I will cheerfully do ſo; and ſince you wiſh to ſhew them mercy, it is juſt they ſhould be heard.' The marſhal then returned to the aſſault, and, calling to him a herald, ſaid,—'Go, and manage to ſpeak with the beſieged; our men will make way for thee; and tell them I am willing to enter into a treaty. The herald ſaid he would do ſo, and entered the ditch clothed

clothed in a coat of arms which had belonged to the duke of Lancaſter, ſaying, 'Open your ranks, and make way for me: I am ſent by the marſhal to parley with theſe Bretons.' As he ſaid this, they made room for him to paſs. The baſtard d'Aulroy, ſeeing him puſh through the crowd, for he had obſerved from the ramparts what had paſſed between him and the marſhal, advanced on the battlements, and, ſhewing himſelf, ſaid; 'Herald, what is it you want? I am one of the captains in this town, with whom, I fancy, you come to ſpeak.' 'It is ſo,' replied the herald, whoſe name was Percy: 'my lord marſhal bids you come to the barriers, for he is deſirous to parley and treat with you.' 'I will do ſo,' ſaid the baſtard, 'if he will order the attack to ceaſe and his men to retire, otherwiſe not. 'I believe you,' anſwered the herald, and returned to relate his anſwer to the marſhal.

The marſhal called his trumpet, and ſaid, 'Sound the retreat;' which was done, and the aſſault ceaſed on all ſides. Upon this, the captains in the town paſſed the gates, and came to the barriers, where they met the conſtable, ſir John Holland, the marſhal and many others of the Engliſh. 'How, my fair ſirs,' ſaid the marſhal, 'can you think of thus holding out and ſuffering yourſelves to be taken by ſtorm, by which you may probably be ſlain, and for certain will loſe all. We know well that the townſmen are very willing to ſurrender to our lord and lady, and would long ago have done ſo, if you had not been with them. You may repent of it;

for, let happen what will, we ſhall never depart hence until the place be ours by fair means or foul. Conſult together, and then come with your anſwer, for I have full powers to treat with you.'

'Sir,' replied the baſtard Aulroy, 'we have already conſulted and formed our reſolution. If you will conſent that we, and what belongs to us, be conducted in ſafety to Vilalpando, or wherever elſe we may pleaſe to go, we will ſurrender the town; but the inhabitants of both ſexes, who may chooſe to remain in it, ſhall be permitted ſo to do, without any riſk or moleſtation, provided they ſubmit themſelves to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter, as other towns in Galicia have done. We know that you are the marſhal of the army, part of whoſe office is to enter into treaties with an enemy, and likewiſe that the duke will ratify whatever engagements you may enter into.' 'That is true,' anſwered ſir Thomas: 'now ſuppoſe I conſent to all you have aſked, I will not that the town be pillaged, under pretence of its wealth having been gained from the adjacent country, for that would cauſe riots between your men and ours.' 'Oh no,' ſaid the baſtard: 'we will only carry away what is our own: but, if any of our men ſhall have taken or bought any thing without paying, we will not enter into any diſpute on that account. With regard to proviſions, I do not believe our men have paid one penny ſince they have been here in garriſon.' 'As for that,' replied the marſhal, 'it is nothing: it is an advantage our men will take as well as yours: but I ſpeak of moveables.' 'Sir,' anſwered

anſwered the baſtard d'Aulroy, 'we have not our men under ſuch command but that ſome will tranſgreſs.' Sir John Holland now interfered, and ſaid,—'Let them paſs: what they have got belongs to them: we ſhall not be ſo ſtrict as to ſearch their trunks.' 'Be it ſo, then,' ſaid the marſhal.

Every thing was now ſettled, and they were to march away on the morrow. The Engliſh returned to their quarters to diſarm, and refreſh themſelves with what they had brought. The Bretons employed the whole day in packing up the great plunder they had made even from Caſtille, for the king had abandoned the whole country to them, which enriched prodigiouſly the firſt comers. While thus employed, they ſeized from the inhabitants of Orenſe whatever they could conveniently lay their hands on, ſuch as furs, cloth and jewels; and when the poor people ſaid, 'Gentlemen, this belongs to us; you did not bring it hither;' they anſwered,—'Hold your tongues, ye wicked people: we have a commiſſion from the king of Caſtille to pay ourſelves wherever we go, and, as you refuſed to do ſo, we are forced to provide for ourſelves. We have ſerved you faithfully and valiantly: you are therefore bound to increaſe our pay, and it is thus we take it.'

The next morning the marſhal mounted his horſe, and, attended by about ſixty lances, rode to the barriers of Orenſe, where he waited a while for the Bretons. When they came, he aſked, 'Are you all ready?' 'Yes,' they replied:

plied: 'give us our paſſport and eſcort.' 'Whither do you wiſh to go?' 'To Vilalpando.' 'It is well,' replied the marſhal: 'here is your eſcort:' and, calling to him an Engliſh knight whoſe name was Stephen Eaſtbury, ſaid, 'Take ten of our lances, to eſcort theſe Bretons, and return to-morrow.' He obeyed the marſhal's orders, and the Bretons marched away well packed and heavily laden.

When they were all gone, the marſhal and his men entered the town, where he was received with the greateſt reſpect; for they took him for the duke of Lancaſter, which was the reaſon of their humility. He aſked ſome of the townſmen.—'Theſe Bretons, who are gone away ſo heavily laden, have they carried off any of your properties?' 'Of ours, my lord! yes, by God, a great deal.' 'And why did you not complain to me? I would have made them reſtore it.' 'My lord, we were afraid; for they threatened to murder us, if we ſaid one word: they are a curſed race, for there is not one but is a thief; and how can we complain when they rob one another?' The marſhal laughed, and, having pauſed, demanded the principal perſons of the town. When they arrived, he made them ſwear to preſerve the town of Orenſe in obedience to the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter in like manner to other towns in Galicia: which being done, he renewed the officers of the town, who took ſimilar oaths. All being finiſhed, he and his company drank ſome wine and returned to the duke of Lancaſter, who was repoſing under

the

the ſhade of the olive-trees; for, it was ſo very hot, neither man nor horſe could withſtand the heat of the ſun, and after eight o'clock it was impoſſible to go abroad to forage. The greateſt pleaſure the duke could have received would have been the information, that the king of Caſtille was on his march to offer him battle; for he was well aware he could never otherwiſe ſucceed in his claim on that kingdom. He was continually making inquiries how the king of Caſtille was employed, and he was anſwered,—'My lord, we learn from the pilgrims who come to Sant Jago, that he is not making any preparations to take the field, but has ſhut himſelf and his men up in garriſons. The duke of Bourbon is not yet arrived, nor is there any intelligence received of his coming.'

The duke was adviſed to remain but five days in Orenſe, and then march to Zamora, and endeavour to force a paſſage over the Duero by the bridge. The knight, on his return from eſcorting the Bretons to Vilalpando, was aſked what were the numbers in garriſon: he ſaid, 'he had heard ſir Oliver du Gueſclin was there with one thouſand ſpears, French and Bretons.' 'It will be a good thing, my lord,' ſaid the conſtable and ſir Thomas Percy, 'if we go thither and ſkirmiſh with them. Perhaps they may come out, and accept our challenge, for ſome of them are very impatient to ſignalize themſelves.' 'I agree to it,' replied the duke; 'let us diſlodge and march hence, for we can gain nothing by ſtaying longer here.' Orders for decampment on the

the morrow were iſſued, and for the army to march towards Vilalpando, and then to Zamora.

We will now ſay ſomething of the king of Portugal, and what befel him on his entrance into Caſtille to form a junction with the duke of Lancaſter.

CHAP. XLIII.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL, BEING REPULSED IN HIS ATTEMPTS TO STORM THE CASTLES OF SANTAREN, BURNS THE TOWN.—HE MARCHES TO FERROL IN GALICIA.

THE king of Portugal, on his departure from Oporto, left his queen, his ſiſter-in-law and the city under the guard of the count de Novaire, with one hundred lances, of Portugueſe and Gaſcons who had come to ſerve him. When the king took the field, he halted the firſt day at the diſtance of only three leagues from Oporto. On the morrow, he diſlodged, and marched in three battalions; but, on account of the infantry, which conſiſted of twelve thouſand men, and the baggage, he could but advance at a foot's pace. The main battalion with the king followed, which was a thouſand good ſpears, and in it were don Galois, Fernando Portelet, John Fernando Portelet, Galopes Fernando Portelet and Pounaſs d'Acunha, ſir Vaſco Martin d'Acunha, who bore the king's banner, John Radighos, Peter John Gomez de Salnez, John

John Radighos de Sar, and the maſter of Avis' Fernando Radighos, all great barons.

The conſtable of Portugal commanded the rear battalion, conſiſting of five hundred ſpears; with him were the count d'Angouſe, the count de l'Eſcalle, le petit Danede, Mondeſt Radighos, Roderigo de Valconſiaux, Ange Salveſe de Geneve, John Anſale de Popelan, all barons and knights.

In this manner did the Portugueſe continue their march towards Santaren. They advanced by ſhort marches, and halted every third day: they alſo lay by the greater part of the day. They arrived at Aljubarota, where they halted for two days, and took as many in going from thence to Ourem. At laſt they came to Santaren, and quartered themſelves therein; for they found the town had been abandoned ſince the battle of Aljubarota, for fear of the Portugueſe, and the inhabitants had retired with their effects into Caſtille. The caſtles, however, were well garriſoned with Bretons and Poitevins, who had been ſent thither for their defence.

The king of Portugal was adviſed to attack theſe caſtles, which were ſituated at each end of the town; for he could not, in honour, paſs by, without attempting ſome deeds of arms: beſides, as the Caſtillians had conquered this place from the Portugueſe, they wiſhed to try if they could recover them. They had brought machines of war from Oporto, for they knew they ſhould have need of them on their march. The king and his army were quartered in and about Santaren,

taren, which is ſituated at the entrance of Caſtille, on the Tagus. By means of this river, they could have all their proviſion and ſtores conveyed to them from Liſbon or Oporto, of which they took the advantage; for they were upwards of thirty thouſand men.

The conſtable, with his diviſion and one half of the commonalty of Portugal, poſted himſelf oppoſite the eaſtern caſtle, called la Perrade. The marſhal with his battalion, and the other half of the commonalty, did the ſame at the oppoſite caſtle, called Callidon.

Morice Fonchans, an able man at arms, and a knight from Brittany, commanded in la Perrade; and ſir James de Mont-merle, a knight from Poitou, in Callidon. They might each have with him fifty lances. Fifteen days paſſed without any thing being done: their machines were, indeed, pointed againſt the walls, and caſt heavy ſtones ten or twelve times a day, but did little damage, except to the roofs of the towers, which they ruined; but the garriſons paid no attention to this, for their lodgings were well arched: and no engine nor ſpringall could hurt them with any ſtones they could throw.

When the Portugueſe ſaw they had no hope of ſucceſs, they grew tired, and reſolved to decamp and enter Galicia, to join the duke of Lancaſter, which would increaſe their ſtrength, and the king and duke might then adviſe together, whither to march. When they departed from Santaren, they ſo completely burnt the town, that there did not remain a ſhed to put a horſe

horſe in. The garriſons, ſeeing them depart, were ſo much rejoiced, that they ſounded their trumpets, and, with other ſigns of joy, continued playing until the whole were out of hearing. The army marched that day for Pontferrant, in Galicia, in their route to Val-Sainte-Catharine, and arrived at Ferrol, which is a tolerably ſtrong town, and in the intereſt of the king of Caſtille, and they halted before it.

CHAP. XLIV.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL, NOT BEING ABLE TO TAKE FERROL BY STORM, GAINS IT BY AN AMBUSCADE, AND PUTS IT UNDER THE OBEDIENCE OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

THE king of Portugal and his army found a plentiful country at Ferrol, which they ſurrounded; and the conſtable and marſhal ſaid, they would ſtorm it, as it was to be taken. They were two days, however, without making any attempt, for they expected that it would ſurrender without an aſſault, but they were miſtaken; for there were in it ſome Bretons and Burgundians, who ſaid they would defend it to the laſt. The machines were brought forth on the third day, and the marſhal's trumpets ſounded for the attack, when all made themſelves ready, and advanced to the walls. The men at arms in Ferrol, hearing the trumpets, knew they ſhould be ſtormed, and made preparations accordingly.

cordingly. They armed themſelves, and all men capable of defence, and ordered the women to gather and bring to them ſtones, to throw down on the enemy. You muſt know, that the women in Galicia and Caſtille are of good courage to defend themſelves, and equally uſeful as the men.

The Portugueſe marched in handſome array to the ditches, which, though deep, were dry, and merrily entered them. They began to aſcend the oppoſite bank, with much courage, but were ſorely treated, unleſs well ſhielded, by thoſe of the town, who, from the walls, caſt down on them ſtones and other things, that wounded and killed ſeveral, and forced them to retreat whether they would or not. There was much throwing of darts on both ſides; and thus laſted the attack until eight o'clock, when the day became exceedingly hot, without wind or breeze, inſomuch, that thoſe in the ditches thought they ſhould be burnt: this heat was ſo exceſſive, that the attack was put an end to, though the machines caſt ſtones into the town, merely for the chance of ſucceſs. The Portugueſe retired to refreſh themſelves, and attend to the wounded. The marſhal reſolved not to renew the attack but by his machines, for otherwiſe it would coſt too many lives; and to ſkirmiſh at the barriers, to amuſe the young knights, and enure them to deeds of arms. This being ſettled, there were, almoſt daily, ſkirmiſhes at the barriers; and theſe within the town were accuſtomed to poſt themſelves without the gates, between them and the barriers, the better to engage their enemies.

Sir

Sir Alvarez Pereira, the marſhal of Portugal, who was ſubtle, and had been long uſed to arms, obſerving this conduct, planned upon it an ambuſcade. Opening himſelf to don Juan Fernando, he ſaid,—'I ſee theſe ſoldiers, when ſkirmiſhing, ſometimes venture beyond the gates: I have formed a plan, which, if you will aſſiſt me to execute, I think we may diſcomfit them. I propoſe that we form an ambuſcade, as near the barriers as poſſible, of five or ſix hundred men, well mounted, and then commence a ſkirmiſh, as uſual, but in no great number; and retreat, by degrees, the moment they ſeem willing to paſs their barriers, which I think their avarice and eagerneſs will induce them to do. We muſt then turn about and attack them luſtily, and the ambuſcade will gallop between them and the gates. The garriſon will now be alarmed, and haſten to order the gates to be opened, and whether they will or not, we ſhall enter the place with them. But ſhould the townſmen refuſe to open the gates, all thoſe who are without muſt be our priſoners.' 'It is well imagined,' replied don Juan. 'Well ſaid the marſhal, 'do you command one party, and I will take the other. You, ſir Martin de Mello, and Ponaſſe d'Acunha, ſhall have the ambuſcade, and I will ſkirmiſh, as that is part of my office.'

This plan was adopted, and five hundred men, well armed and mounted, were choſen to form the ambuſcade. For three days, there had not been any ſkirmiſhing, to the ſurpriſe of the garriſon, who ſaid to the inhabitants; 'See, wicked people

people as ye are, ye wanted to ſurrender to the king of Portugal without ſtriking a blow, and would have done ſo, if we had not been here to defend the honour of your town: this we have ſo ſucceſsfully done, that the king of Portugal is on the eve of his departure, without having effected any thing.'

On the fourth day, according to what had been laid down, the marſhal advanced to the ſkirmiſh with but few followers: the great ambuſcade remained behind. The Bretons, eager to make rich priſoners, having already captured ſix, ſeeing the Portugueſe at the barriers, had the gates opened, which they left unfaſtened, in caſe of failure (for they had no great dependance on the townſmen), and the wicket wide open, and ſallied forth to ſkirmiſh with darts and lances, as is uſual in ſuch combats. The marſhal, when he ſaw the time was come, made his men wheel, and act as if they were tired, retreating by degrees. Thoſe within the place, obſerving this, and thinking they ſhould make priſoners of them all, opened the whole of the barriers, ſallied forth, and, falling on the Portugueſe, captured five and twenty. In the ſtruggle and purſuit, the Bretons never thought of cloſing the barriers; and the marſhal now made his ſignal for the ambuſcade to advance, which it did full gallop, and by getting between the Bretons and the place, made themſelves maſters of the barriers. The French and Bretons now haſtened to re-enter the gates, but it was of no avail, for the Portugueſe entered with them; and thus was the town won.

Very

Very few were ſlain, and the ſoldiers in garriſon were made priſoners, except ten or twelve, who eſcaped by a poſtern gate and went to Vilalpando, where ſir Oliver du Gueſclin was in garriſon, with one thouſand French lances at leaſt, and theſe runaways related to him how Ferrol had been loſt. In this manner was the town won by the Portugueſe, and put under the obedience of the duke of Lancaſter, for whom they made war. The king of Portugal was much pleaſed at the ſucceſs of his men, and inſtantly ſent intelligence of it to the duke, adding, he had greatly increaſed his inheritance by the capture of a town; and that he and his army were deſirous and active to conquer the reſt.

CHAP. XLV.

THE ARMY OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER COMES BEFORE NOYA IN GALICIA.—THE ENGLISH ARE RECEIVED, AT THE BARRIERS, BY BARROIS DES BARRES AND HIS COMPANIONS.

THE duke of Lancaſter was much rejoiced at the news from the king of Portugal: he had left Orenſe, and was on his march towards Noya, where le Barrois des Barres, ſir John de Châtelmorant, ſir Triſtan de la Jaille, ſir Reginald de Roye, ſir William de Montigny, and many other knights and ſquires were in garriſon.

When the duke came within ſight of the caſtle, the marſhal ſaid,—'There is Noya: if Corunna be

be one of the keys of Galicia towards the ſea, the caſtle of Noya is another towards Caſtille; and whoever wiſhes to be lord of Caſtille muſt be maſter of theſe two places. Let us march thither, for they tell me that Barrois des Barres, one of the ableſt captains of France, is within it, and let us have ſome ſkirmiſhing with the garriſon at the end of the bridge.' 'We are willing to do ſo,' ſaid ſir Maubrun de Linieres and ſir John d'Ambreticourt, who were riding by his ſide.

The van battalion now advanced, conſiſting of five hundred men at arms, for the duke was deſirous of making a good appearance to thoſe within the caſtle; and he knew alſo that his marſhals would offer to ſkirmiſh, ſhould they find any to accept their challenge. The watch on the caſtle, ſeeing the van of the Engliſh approach, began to ſound his horn ſo agreeably, it was a pleaſure to hear him.

Le Barrois and his companions, to the amount of one hundred men at arms, hearing that the Engliſh were at hand, armed themſelves, and, in good array, advanced to the barriers, where they drew up under twelve pennons. Sir John des Barres, being the moſt renowned, was the commander in chief, and next to him, ſir John de Châtelmorant. When ſir Thomas Moreaux, the marſhal of the army, found himſelf near the place, he halted, and, having diſmounted as well as his companions, they gave their horſes to the pages and ſervants, and marched in a compact body, each knight and ſquire with his ſpear in hand, towards the barriers: every ſix paces they halted,

to

to dreſs themſelves without opening their ranks. To ſay the truth, it was a beautiful ſight.

When they were come as far as they wiſhed, they halted for a ſhort time, and then advanced their front to begin the action. They were gallantly received; and, I believe, had the two parties been in the plain, many more bold actions would have taken place than it was poſſible to find an opportunity for where they were; for the barriers being cloſely ſhut, prevented them from touching each other.

The marſhal hit ſir John de Châtelmorant with his lance, as did ſir John the marſhal; for each was eager to hurt the other, but, from the ſtrength of their armour, they could not. Sir Thomas Percy attacked Barrois des Barres; Maubrun de Linieres, ſir William de Montigny; ſir John d'Ambreticourt, ſir Reginald de Roye; the lord Talbot, ſir Triſtan de la Jaille: ſo every man had his match; and when they were fatigued or heated they retired, and other freſh knights and ſquires renewed the ſkirmiſh. This was continued until paſt eight o'clock: indeed, it was twelve before it was entirely over. The archers next came to the barriers; but the knights withdrew, for fear of the arrows, and ordered their croſs-bows and Caſtillians to oppoſe them, which they did until noon, when the luſty varlets continued the ſkirmiſh until ſun-ſet, and the knights then returned freſh and vigorous to renew it.

Thus was the day employed until night, when the Engliſh retired to their quarters, and the knights

knights into the caſtle, where they kept a good guard. The Engliſh were quartered about half a league from Noya, on the banks of the river, which was very welcome to them and their horſes, for they had great difficulty in procuring water on their march. They intended to remain there five or ſix days, and then march to Vilalpando, and look at the conſtable of Caſtille and the French there in garriſon. They had alſo heard from the king of Portugal, who was encamped in the plains of Ferrol, and intended marching for the town of Padron * in Galicia, which was in the line of march of the Engliſh; and I believe the king and duke were to meet in this town, to confer together on the ſtate of affairs, and determine on a plan for carrying on the war. They had already been one month in the enemy's country, and had conquered all Galicia, except one or two places, without having any intelligence of the king of Caſtille or the French, which greatly ſurpriſed them; for they had heard that the king of Caſtille had iſſued his ſummons from Burgos, where he reſided, to all parts of Caſtille, Seville, Cordova, Toledo, Léon, Validolid, Soria, and had collected ſixty thouſand men, not including ſix thouſand men at arms from France. The duke of Bourbon was likewiſe daily expected, for he had quitted Paris.

It was for this reaſon the Engliſh and Portugueſe

*Padron is ſituated on the river Ulla, four leagues to the ſouthward of Sant Jago: it was formerly a biſhoprick, but is now transferred to Sant Jago.

wanted

wanted to unite their armies, to be in greater force, and better enabled to meet the enemy; for they believed all that had been told them reſpecting the French and Caſtillians as true, and outwardly ſhewed much joy thereat. They would willingly have encountered their enemies, for they were convinced they could never bring their diſpute to any deciſion without a battle.

Sir William de Lignac and ſir Walter de Paſſac were always about the king's perſon, and accompanied him wherever he went; for they had two or three times a week intelligence from France of what was going on, and likewiſe from the duke of Bourbon. They were waiting for him, as he had begun his journey, by way of Avignon, to viſit the pope and cardinals; and would not therefore offer combat during his abſence, nor would it have been becoming them, ſo to do. Among the news they had from France, the moſt ſurpriſing was the account of the duke of Brittany's arreſt and confinement of the conſtable in the caſtle of Ermine, until he ranſomed himſelf, by paying down one hundred thouſand francs and the ſurrender of three caſtles and a town, by which the intended invaſion of England was prevented. They were greatly aſtoniſhed, and could not imagine what the duke of Brittany meant by it: they, however, ſuppoſed that he muſt have been inſtigated thereto by the council of England.

CHAP. XLVI.

THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS SOME OF HIS NOBLES TO DEMAND FROM THE DUKE OF BRITTANY THE REASON OF THE INSULT OFFERED TO HIM IN THE PERSON OF HIS CONSTABLE, SIR OLIVER DE CLISSON.

THE court of France, more particularly the king's uncles, and the principal lords, were much diſtreſſed by the defiance that was ſent by the duke of Gueldres; for it was outrageous and rude, and not in the common ſtile of ſuch challenges, as I ſhall explain when I mention the particulars. They were likewiſe much vexed at the late conduct of the duke of Brittany, which had broken up the expedition to England by the impriſonment of its leader. This had been greatly prejudicial to the king, nor could they diſcover any cauſe he had to aſſign for ſuch conduct. The king did not pay ſuch attention to theſe matters, which, conſidering his youth, was not to be wondered at, as if he had been of more advanced years; for ſome of the old lords, who remembered former times, ſaid, 'that by a similar act the kingdom had been much agitated, when the king of Navarre aſſaſſinated sir Charles d'Eſpaign, who at the time was conſtable of France, for which king John could never afterwards bear the king of Navarre, and

and had deprived him, as far as he was able, of all his poſſeſſions in Normandy.' 'Do you ſuppoſe,' ſaid others, 'that if king Charles, the father of our king, were now alive, who loved ſo much the conſtable, he would not have made the duke pay ſeverely for this inſult? By my faith would he, and inſtantly have declared war againſt him, and, coſt what it would, have driven him out of his duchy.'

Thus was the matter diſcuſſed through France, where all agreed that he had acted very ill. The king and his uncles, to pacify the people, who were much diſſatisfied, and to inquire into the grounds of this buſineſs, reſolved to ſend a prelate, and three able and prudent barons, to hear the duke's reaſons, and to ſummon him to Paris, or wherever elſe the king might pleaſe, to make proper excuſes for his conduct. Sir Milon de Dormans, biſhop of Beauvais, was nominated as principal: he was a moſt able man, of great eloquence, and was to be accompanied by sir John de Vienne, sir John de Bueil and the lord de la Riviere, who had received full inſtructions what they were to ſay; but to be the more particularly informed of what had paſſed, the biſhop of Beauvais went to Montlehery, the residence of the conſtable, to learn from him the moſt minute details. This town and caſtle, with its dependancies, had been given to him and to his heirs by king Charles. The biſhop, during this visit, was ſeized with an illneſs that forced him to keep his bed, and, after fifteen days ſtruggle againſt the fever, it carried him off, ſo very ſevere was the attack. The biſhop of Langres

was

was nominated in the place of the biſhop of Beauvais, who ſet out, with the before mentioned barons, for Brittany.

CHAP. XLVII.

FROISSART MENTIONS THE PERSON FROM WHOM HE LEARNT THE ARREST OF THE CONSTABLE DE CLISSON; WHO LIKEWISE INFORMS HIM THAT SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN OUGHT TO BE CALLED DU GLAY-AQUIN.

I MAY, perhaps, be aſked, how I became acquainted with the events in this hiſtory, to ſpeak ſo circumſtantially about them. I reply to thoſe who ſhall do ſo, that I have, with great attention and diligence, ſought in divers kingdoms and countries for the facts which have been, or may hereafter be mentioned in it: for God has given me grace and opportunities to ſee, and make acquaintance with the greater part of the principal lords of France and England. It ſhould be known, that in the year 1390, I had laboured at this hiſtory thirty-ſeven years, and at that time I was fifty-ſeven years old: a man may, therefore, learn much in ſuch a period, when he is in his vigour, and well received by all parties. During my youth, I was five years attached to the king and queen of England, and kindly entertained in the houſehold of king

king John of France and king Charles his ſon. I was, in conſequence, enabled to hear much during thoſe times; and, for certain, the greateſt pleaſure I have ever had, was to make every poſſible inquiry, in regard to what was paſſing in the world, and then to write down all that I had learnt.

I will now ſay from whence I heard of the arreſt of the conſtable, and the conſequences that followed. I was riding about the time this paſſed, or perhaps a year after, from Angers to Tours, and had ſlept at Beaufort en Vallée.* On the morrow I overtook a knight from Brittany, called ſir William d'Ancenis, who was going to viſit madame de Maille in Touraine, who was his couſin, as ſhe had lately become a widow. I made acquaintance with the knight, for he was courteous and obliging in ſpeech, and inquired the news from him; more particularly about the impriſonment of the conſtable, the truth of which I was eager to know. He gave me the information I wanted; for he ſaid he had been at the parliament at Vannes, with his couſin the lord d'Ancenis, a powerful baron in Brittany. In the ſame manner as ſir Eſpaign du Lyon told me all that paſſed in Foix, Béarn and Gaſcony, and as don Juan Fernando Portelo the events in Caſtille and Portugal, did the gallant knight converſe with me, and would have continued it longer, had I rode farther in his company.

* Beaufort en Vallée,—or Beaufort la Ville, a town of Anjou, on the river Authion, ſix leagues from Angers, ſixteen from Tours.

We

We had advanced four long leagues between Montlihargne and Preuilly, riding at a gentle pace, when he told me many things on the road, reſpecting Brittany, which I treaſured up in my memory. As we were thus riding, we entered a meadow near to Preuilly, when he diſmounted, and ſaid,—'Ah, may God keep the ſoul of the good conſtable of France; for he had, on this ſpot, a moſt honourable combat, and greatly profitable to the country; but he was not then conſtable, and ſerved under the banner of sir John de Bueil, on his return from the expedition into Spain.' 'Pray have the goodneſs to relate it to me.' 'I will,' ſaid he; 'but let us remount our horſes.' We did ſo, and, continuing our journey, he thus began: 'In the time I am ſpeaking of, this country was quite filled with Engliſh, and thieves from Gaſcony, Brittany, Germany: adventurers from all nations had fixed their quarters on both ſides of the Loire, for the war between England and France was renewed. A party of them had fortified themſelves in the caſtle of Beaufort en Vallée; which you have ſeen, and ſupported themſelves by plundering the country all round it. But to come to the immediate object of my ſtory: ſome Engliſh and Gaſcons had poſſeſſed themſelves of Preuilly, and ſtrengthened it ſo much, that none attempted to diſlodge them: they had alſo ſome other ſmaller forts near; and when they made any excurſions, they could aſſemble between eight hundred and a thouſand combatants.

'The conſtable, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, ſir John

John de Bueil, the lord de Mailly, and other knights, determined to deliver the country from theſe people, and collected about five hundred ſpears. They learnt that the Engliſh intended marching towards Saumer; that all the captains of the different forts were to unite their forces; and that the place of meeting was Preuilly, which you ſee before us. Our men, having croſſed the river, placed themſelves in ambuſcade, in the wood below us, on the right hand. The enemy left Preuilly at ſun-riſe, to the amount of nine hundred fighting men: and when our party in ambuſh ſaw them advancing, they knew a combat to be inevitable. They held a council on what ſhould be their cry, and were desirous it ſhould be, 'Sir Bertrand!' but he would not conſent, and declared he would not display either banner or pennon, but be under that of sir John de Bueil. Our enemies entered the mead, where we juſt now diſmounted, and they had ſcarcely done ſo before our men ſallied out of their ambuſh to meet them. On ſeeing us, being of good courage, they drew themſelves up in handſome order. We did the ſame, and both parties advanced to the combat, which inſtantly commenced with ſuch thruſting of lances that many were thrown down on each ſide. It laſted a conſiderable time without either giving way; but, to ſay the truth, we were all picked men, and with the enemy were numbers badly armed and plunderers. They gave us, however, full employment; but sir Morice Triſequedy, sir Geoffry Ricon, sir Geoffry Kerimel and Morfonace, joining sir Bertrand

Bertrand du Gueſclin, full gallop, reinforced us with ſixty good ſpears, whom they brought with them, and, attacking the Engliſh on horſeback threw them into a confuſion they never could recover.

'The leaders of theſe pillagers, perceiving the event was likely to turn out unfavourable to them, mounted their horſes, but not all; for ſeven lay dead on the field, with three hundred of their men. The purſuit laſted as far as St. Maur, where ſir Robert Cheney, Robert Hervey, Richard Giles and James Clerk got into a boat, and ſaved themſelves by croſſing the Loire. They made for four caſtles the Engliſh had on that ſide the river, wherein they did not long remain, but haſtened for Auvergne and Limouſin, as they fancied the conſtable was ſtill at their heels.

'By this defeat, my good maſter, was all this country delivered from pillagers, and never ſince that time have any Engliſh or others eſtabliſhed themſelves here. I therefore ſay, that conſtable Bertrand was a gallant man, and of great honour and advantage to France, for he regained large tracts of territory from her enemies.' 'By my faith, ſir, you ſay truly: he was indeed a very valiant man, and ſo is ſir Oliver du Gueſclin.' On my naming him du Gueſclin, the knight laughed; and I ſaid, 'Sir, what do you laugh at?' 'Becauſe you call him du Gueſclin, which is not his proper name, nor ever was, although he is generally ſo called, even by us who come from Brittany. Sir Bertrand was during his lifetime deſirous to alter this, but could not; for this word is more naturally pronounced than the one he wiſhed

wiſhed to ſubſtitute for it.' 'Pray, ſir' ſaid I, 'have the kindneſs to tell me if there be any great difference between them.' 'No, God help me: the only difference is Glay-aquin inſtead of Gleſquin, or Gueſclin. I will tell you whence this ſurname is derived, according to what I have heard the old people in Brittany ſay, and it is certainly true, for you may find it written in the old chronicles of Brittany.' This ſpeech gave me great pleaſure, and I replied.—'Sir, I ſhall think myſelf much obliged by your ſo doing; and what you ſay ſhall not be forgotten, for ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin was ſo renowned a knight that his reputation ought to be augmented by every poſſible means.' 'That is true,' ſaid the knight, and thus began:

'In the reign of Charlemagne, that great conqueror, who added ſo much to Chriſtendom and France; for he was emperor of Rome as well as king of France and Germany; and whoſe body lies now at Aix la Chapelle. This king Charles, as is ſeen in the ancient chronicles (for you know that all the knowledge we poſſeſs in this world we owe to writing, and upon no other foundation can we depend for truth but on what is contained in approved books), was ſeveral times in Spain, where he once remained for nine years without returning to France, but conquering all before him. At this time there was a pagan king, called Aquin, who reigned over Bugia and Barbary, that lie oppoſite to Spain. The kingdom of Spain was very conſiderable, if you follow its coaſts from St. Jean du Pied des Ports, for it then

then contained all Arragon, Navarre, Biſcay, Oporto, Coimbra, Liſbon, Seville, Cordova, Toledo and Léon, and theſe formerly were conquered by this great king. During his long reſidence in Spain, Aquin, king of Bugia and Barbary, aſſembled an army and embarked for Brittany, where he landed at the port of Vannes. He brought his wife and children with him, and, having eſtabliſhed himſelf and his army in the country, proceeded to make further conqueſts. King Charles was duly informed of what was paſſing in Brittany; but he would not let it interfere with his preſent undertaking, ſaying, 'Let him eſtabliſh himſelf in Brittany: it will not be difficult for us to free the country from him and his people; but we will firſt complete the conqueſt of this country, and ſubmit it to the Chriſtian faith.'

'This king, Aquin, built a handſome tower on the ſea-ſhore near to Vannes, called the Glay, wherein he took pleaſure to reſide. When Charlemagne had accompliſhed his expedition to Spain by the delivery of Galicia and other provinces from the Saracens, whoſe kings he had ſlain, and, by driving out the infidels, had brought the whole kingdom under the Chriſtian faith; he ſailed for Brittany, and gave battle to king Aquin and his adherents, with ſuch ſucceſs that the greater part of the infidels were killed and king Aquin forced to fly, in a veſſel that lay ready prepared for him at the foot of the tower of Glay. He was ſo hard preſſed by the French, he could only embark himſelf, his wife and ſome of his family, and in the

the hurry forgot a young child, of about a year old, that was aſleep in the tower. The king having eſcaped, this child was brought to Charlemagne, who was much pleaſed with him, and had him baptiſed. Roland and Oliver were his godfathers at the font, and the emperor gave him handſome preſents and the lands his father had won in Brittany. This child, when grown up, was a valiant knight, and called Oliver du Glay-aquin, becauſe he had been found in the tower of Glay, and was the ſon of king Aquin.

'Such was the foundation of the family of ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, which, as you ſee, ought to be called du Glay-aquin. Sir Bertrand was uſed to ſay, that when he ſhould have expelled don Pedro from Spain and crowned don Henry de Tranſtamare, he would go to Bugia, as he ſhould have only the ſea to croſs, and demand his inheritance, and would undoubtedly have executed it; for don Henry would gladly have ſupplied him with men and ſhips; but the prince of Wales, by bringing back and replacing don Pedro on the throne of Caſtille, put an end to it. Sir Bertrand was made priſoner by ſir John Chandos, at the famous battle of Najara, and ranſomed for one hundred thouſand francs. He had been before ranſomed by the ſame knight, and for the like ſum, at the battle of Auray. The renewal of the war between England and France put an effectual ſtop to this African expedition, and gave him ſo much employment that he could not attend to any thing elſe. He was, nevertheleſs, the direct iſſue from king Aquin, who

who reigned over Bugia and Barbary. Thus have I traced to you the deſcent of ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin.' 'That is true,' replied I, 'and I am very thankful to you for it, which I will not forget.' As I ſaid this, we arrived at Preüilly*.

CHAP. XLVIII.

AMBASSADORS FROM THE KING OF FRANCE WAIT ON THE DUKE OF BRITTANY RESPECTING THE ARREST OF HIS CONSTABLE.—THE DUKE, HAVING HEARD THEM, GIVES THEM HIS ANSWER.

IF I could have been as long with ſir William d'Ancenis as I was with ſir Eſpaign du Lyon, when we travelled together from Pamiers to Orthès in Béarn, or with ſir Juan Fernando Portelet, he would have told me many intereſting things: but it could not be; for, ſoon after din-

* The high reputation of Bertrand du Gueſclin gave riſe to many falſe reports of his origin: the above is one. To detect this, it is only neceſſary to ſtate, 1ſt, There never was a prince in Brittany of the name of Aquin.—2dly, Charlemagne conquered that province by his lieutenants, and was never there in perſon.—3dly, That the original name of the houſe of du Gueſclin was not Glay-aquin, but Guarplic, a compound of two Breton words, Gwar and Plic, which ſignifies a creek, and deſcribes the ſituation of the old caſtle du Guarplic, that was built on a creek, or gulph, in Concale bay, in the pariſh of Saint Coulomb, dioceſe of Dôl.

For further particulars, ſee l'hiſtoire de la Bretagne.

ner,

ner, we came to two roads; one leading to Tours, whither I was bound, and the other to Mailly, which he was to follow. Here then we took leave of each other, and ſeparated; but on our road from Preuilly, before our ſeparation, he told me many things about the biſhop of Langres, who had ſucceeded the biſhop of Beauvis in the embaſſy to the duke of Brittany with ſir John de Beuil, and the anſwer they received from the duke. Upon the authority of what the knight ſaid, I have written as follows.

The ambaſſadors, having taken leave of the king and council, continued their journey until they came to Nantes, where they inquired the reſidence of the duke. They were told, that he chiefly reſided at or near Vannes in preference to any other place. They left Nantes, and did not ſtop until they arrived at Vannes, as it is only twenty leagues diſtant, and diſmounted in the town, for the duke lived in the caſtle called la Motte. When they had equipped themſelves in a manner becoming their rank, they waited on him, who received them outwardly with much affection.

The biſhop of Langres, being a prelate, was the ſpokeſman, and harangued in a handſome manner, in the preſence of his two companions, ſir John de Vienne and ſir John de Beuil, ſaying,—'Lord duke, we are ſent hither by the king our ſovereign, and by my lords his uncles, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, to ſay they are wondrouſly ſurpriſed you ſhould have prevented the invaſion of England from taking place, when

when on the point of failing, and have ranſomed the conſtable of France for ſuch an immenſe ſum, beſides ſeizing three of his caſtles in Brittany and the town of Jugon*, which, ſhould they turn againſt the country, may ſeriouſly injure it. We are therefore charged to order you, on the part of our ſovereign lord the king, and of our lords his uncles, to reſtore to ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, thoſe parts of his inheritance you now withhold from him, and give him peaceable poſſeſſion thereof, according to juſtice, in the ſame condition they were in before they were ſurrendered up to you through conſtraint, and not according to any juſt claim you had upon them, and alſo the ſum of money you have received, wholly and fully, wherever he ſhall be pleaſed to have it paid. The king and his council likewiſe ſummon you to appear at Paris, or wherever elſe they may direct, to excuſe yourſelf for what you have done. The king is ſo good tempered and forbearing that, from ties of blood, he will readily liſten to your excuſes. Should they not be quite ſatisfactory, our lords, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, will ſo faſhion them to the utmoſt of their abilities, and by entreaties or otherwiſe manage the matter ſo that you ſhall remain friend and couſin to the king, as it is reaſonable you ſhould be.'

* Jugon muſt have been of conſiderable conſequence, for I believe there is an old proverb,

'Qui a Bretagne ſans Jugon
A un chappe ſans chaperon.'

The

The biſhop, turning to ſir John de Vienne, ſaid, 'Do you agree in my ſentiments?' 'Yes, ſir,' he replied. Sir John de Bueil made a ſimilar anſwer: when this paſſed, there were but theſe four in the apartment.

The duke, having heard the biſhop, was very thoughtful, and not without reaſon, for the words were ſo clear they required no expounding. At length he ſaid,—'Sir, I have well heard what you had to ſay: it was proper I ſhould do ſo, as you come from my ſovereign lord the king of France, and my lords his uncles. I am therefore bounden to pay you, as coming from them, every honour and reſpect, and am willing to do ſo. What you have ſaid, however, demands conſideration; and I ſhall take the advice of my council, that I may give you ſuch an anſwer as may pleaſe you, for I would not act otherwiſe.'

'You ſay well,' replied the ambaſſadors, 'and we are ſatisfied.' They then took leave, and returned to their hôtel. Towards evening, they received an invitation from the duke to dine with him on the morrow, which they accepted. The next day they went to the caſtle, where they found the duke and his knights, who received them magnificently. Shortly after their arrival, baſons and ewers were brought, for them to waſh before they ſat down to table. The biſhop of Langres, in reſpect to his prelacy, was ſeated above all the company: next to him was the duke, then ſir John de Vienne and ſir John de Bueil. The dinner was very ſplendid, ſumptuous, and well ſerved: when it was over, they retired into the preſence chamber,

ber, where they converſed on different ſubjects, and amuſed themſelves in hearing the minſtrels.

The lords from France thought they ſhould have then received their anſwer, but were diſappointed. Wine and ſpices were brought, which having partaken of, they retired to their hôtels, and remained the whole evening comfortably at home. On the enſuing morning, it was ſignified to them that the duke wiſhed to ſee them at the caſtle, whither they went; and, being introduced to the apartment where the duke was, he received them kindly, and thus ſpoke: 'My fair ſirs, I know you are anxious for an anſwer to what you have been charged to tell me from my ſovereign and other lords, that you may report it to them: I therefore declare, that I have done nothing to ſir Oliver de Cliſſon that I repent of, except that he has eſcaped too cheaply and with his life: this I ſpared ſolely on account of his office, and not in any manner out of perſonal regard; for he has behaved ſo very ill to me, in ſeveral inſtances, that I hate him mortally; and, begging my ſovereign's and their graces pardon, I have not prevented the expedition to England taking place by the arreſt of the conſtable. Of this I am able and willing to exculpate myſelf; for the day I had him arreſted, I was thinking no harm againſt it*: it is proper to take advantage of an enemy wherever it may be found. If he had been ſlain, I believe the kingdom of France would not

* The original runs, "nul mal je n'y penſoye."

have

have been the worſe governed for having loſt the ſuppoſed benefit of his council. With regard to the caſtles he ſurrendered to me, and of which I am in poſſeſſion, I ſhall keep them until the king by force diſpoſſeſſes me of them. As to the money, I reply, that from the hatred of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, I have incurred debts in this and other countries, and have, from this ſum, repaid thoſe to whom I was indebted.'

Such was the anſwer the duke of Brittany gave to the ambaſſadors from the king of France. Many debates enſued, to induce the duke to ſend a more moderate anſwer; but his replies were always to the ſame effect as what he had before ſpoken. When they found they could not obtain any thing more, they deſired to take their leave, which being granted, they prepared for their departure, and journeyed until they arrived at Paris, thence they went to the caſtle of Beauté, near Vincennes, where the king and queen reſided. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy ſoon followed them, as they were impatient to hear the duke of Brittany's anſwer, which as you have heard, I will not repeat. But as thoſe ſent into Brittany had not ſucceeded in any one point, the king and council were greatly diſpleaſed with the duke, and ſaid he was the proudeſt and moſt preſumptuous man alive, and that matters ſhould not remain as they were; for the conſequences would be too prejudicial and diſgraceful to the crown of France. It was fully the intention of the king

and his council to make war on the duke of Brittany.

The duke expected nothing leſs; for he knew he had angered the king of France, as well as thoſe of his council: but his hatred againſt the conſtable was ſo deep, it deprived him of the uſe of his reaſon; and he ſorely repented that, when in his power, he had not put him to death. Things remained in this ſtate a conſiderable time. The duke reſided at Vannes, but ſeldom went abroad for fear of ambuſcades: he paid great court to the principal cities and towns in the duchy, and made ſecret treaties with the Engliſh: he alſo garriſoned his ſtrong places the ſame as in times of war. His opinion continually varied, as to what had paſſed: ſometimes he ſaid, he wiſhed he had not arreſted the conſtable; at others, to excuſe himſelf, he declared that Cliſſon had ſo grievouſly inſulted him, he had good reaſon for what he had done. This conduct had cauſed him to be feared in the country: for the lord hath ſmall authority who is not feared by his ſubjects;* for whenever he pleaſes he may be at peace with them.

We will now leave the duke of Brittany, and return to the affairs of England, which, at this moment, were in a troubled and dangerous ſtate.

* Car c'eſt petite ſeigneurie de ſeigneur qui n'eſt craint et doubté de ſes gens.

CHAP. XLIX.

THE DUKES OF YORK AND GLOCESTER, UNCLES TO THE KING, CONFEDERATE, WITH OTHER BARONS, AGAINST HIM AND HIS COUNCIL.—THE PEOPLE ARE DISCONTENTED WITH THE DUKE OF IRELAND.—THE LONDONERS, THROUGH THE MEANS OF THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER AND HIS FRIENDS, OBTAIN, FROM THE KING, THAT A DAY SHOULD BE FIXED FOR THOSE WHO HAD MANAGED THE FINANCES TO RENDER AN ACCOUNT OF THEM.

YOU have before heard, that the dukes of York and Gloceſter had confederated with the earl of Saliſbury, the earl of Arundel, the earl of Northumberland, the earl of Nottingham and the archbiſhop of Canterbury, againſt the king and his council, with whom they were very much diſſatisfied. They ſaid,—'This duke of Ireland doth with the king and the realm as he pleaſes: the king has only baſe knaves about his perſon, without any regard to noblemen; and as long as he attends to no other advice than that of thoſe now near him, things cannot go on well; for no kingdom can proſper when governed by wicked men. It is well known, that when a poor perſon is exalted and ſupported by his lord, he corrupts the people, and deſtroys the country; for what can a baſe-born man feel of honour: his ſole wiſh is to enrich himſelf, juſt like the otter, who, on entering a pond, devours all the fiſh therein.

Whence comes it that this duke of Ireland hath ſuch power over the king, (we know his origin) and governeth all England at his pleaſure, while the king's uncles are diſregarded? Such conduct is not longer to be ſuffered. We are not ignorant who the earl of Oxford was, and that in this country he had not one good quality, either of ſenſe, honour or gentility allowed him.' 'Sir John Chandos, added a knight, 'made him feel this very ſharply once, at the palace of the prince of Wales, at St. Andrews, in Bordeaux.' 'How ſo?' demanded another, who wiſhed to know the particulars. 'I will tell you,' replied the knight, 'for I was preſent. Wine was ſerving round to the prince of Wales and a large party of Engliſh lords, in an apartment of his palace; and, when the prince had drank, the cup was carried to ſir John Chandos, as conſtable of Aquitaine, who took it and drank, without paying any attention to the earl of Oxfore, father to this duke of Ireland, or deſiring him to drink firſt. After ſir John Chandos had drank; one of his ſquires preſented the wine to the earl of Oxford; but, indignant that Chandos had drank before him, he refuſed it, and ſaid, by way of mockery, to the ſquire who was holding the cup, 'Go, carry it to thy maſter, Chandos: let him drink.' 'Why ſhould I go to him? for he has drank. Drink yourſelf, ſince it is offered you; for, by St. George, if you do not, I will throw it in your face.' The earl, afraid leſt the ſquire ſhould execute what he had ſaid, for he was bold enough to

do

do ſo, took the cup and put it to his mouth and drank, or at leaſt pretended to drink. Sir John Chandos was not far off, and heard and ſaw the whole, and his ſquire, whilſt the prince was in converſation with others, came and told him what had paſſed. Sir John Chandos took no notice of it until the prince had retired, when, ſtepping up to the earl of Oxford, he ſaid; 'What, ſir Aubrey*, are you diſpleaſed that I drank firſt, who am the conſtable of this country? I may well drink and take precedence before you, ſince my moſt renowned ſovereign, the king of England, and my lords, the princes, aſſent to it. True it is, that you were at the battle of Poitiers; but all now preſent do not know the cauſe of it ſo well as I do: I will declare it, that they may remember it. When my lord, the prince, had finiſhed his journey to Languedoc, Carcaſſone and Narbonne, and was returned to this city of Bordeaux, you took it into your head that you would return to England; but what did the king ſay to you? I know it well, though I was not preſent. He aſked, if you had accompliſhed your ſervice; and, afterward, what you had done with his ſon. You replied, 'Sir, I left him in good health at Bordeaux.' 'What!' ſaid the king,

* This earl of Oxford's name was Thomas. Sir Alberic de Vere was his brother. He was employed in different negotiations by Richard II.

Robert was the ſon and heir of Thomas, the laſt earl of Oxford, and created duke of Ireland.

See Dugdale's Baronage.

'and

'and have you been bold enough to return hither without him? Did I not ſtrictly enjoin you, and the others who accompanied him, never to return without him, under the forfeiture of your lands; and yet you have dared to diſobey my commands. I now poſitively order you to quit my kingdom within four days and return to the prince; for if you be found on the fifth day, you ſhall loſe your life and eſtates.' You were afraid to hazard diſobedience, as was natural, and left England. You were ſo fortunate, that you joined the prince four days before the battle of Poitiers, and had, that day, the command of forty lances, while I had ſixty. Now, conſider if I, who am conſtable of Aquitaine, have not the right to take precedence, and drink before you do.'

'The earl of Oxford was much aſhamed, and would willingly have been any where but there. He was forced, however, to bear with what ſir John Chandos ſaid, who ſpoke aloud that all might hear him.' 'After this,' ſaid another knight, 'we ought not to be ſurpriſed that the duke of Ireland, who is the ſon of this earl of Oxford, is not more conſiderate, and does not keep in his memory what may be told him of his father, inſtead of ruling the whole kingdom of England, and ſetting himſelf above the king's uncles.' 'And why ſhould he not do ſo,' replied others, 'ſince the king wills it?'

There were great murmurings throughout England againſt the duke of Ireland; but what injured him the moſt was his conduct to his

duchef

ducheſs, the lady Philippa, daughter of the lord de Coucy earl of Bedford, who was a handſome and noble lady, and of the higheſt extraction. He fell in love with a German lady, one of the attendants of the preſent queen; and, by his ſolicitations at the court of Rome, pope Urban VI. granted him a divorce from the lady Philippa, without any title of juſtice, but through preſumption and indifference, when he married this lady. King Richard conſented thereto; for he was ſo blinded by the duke of Ireland that, if he had declared that black was white, the king would not have ſaid to the contrary.

The mother of the duke was mightily enraged with him for this conduct, and took the lord de Coucy's daughter to her home and made her her own companion. The duke certainly acted ill, and evil befel him for it; as this was one of the principal cauſes of the hatred all England bore him *. It is but juſt that what is conceived in

* Walſingham, ſpeaking of this tranſaction, ſays.—'Accidit his diebus, ut Robertus Vere, elatus de honoribus quos rex impendebat eidem jugiter, ſuam repudiaret uxorem juvenculam, nobilem, atque pulchram, genitam de illuſtris Edwardi regis filia Iſabella, et aliam duceret, quæ cum regina Anna venerat de Boemia (ut fertur) cujuſdam Cellarii filiam, ignobilem prorſus atque fœdam: ob quam cauſam magna ſurrepſit occaſio ſcandalorum (cujus nomen erat in vulgaria idiomate Lancecrona). Favebat ſibi in his omnibus ipſe rex, nolens ipſum in aliquo contriſtare, vel potius (prout dicitur) non valens ſuis votis aliqualiter obviare, qui maleficiis cujuſdam fratris (qui cum dicto Roberto fuit) rex impeditus nequaquam quod bonum eſt, et honeſtum cernere, vel ſectari valebat.'

evil

evil ſhould have an unfortunate end; and this duke confided ſo much in the affection of the king, he thought no one would dare to injure him.

It was reported through England, that a new tax was to be levied on every fire, and that each was to pay a noble, the rich making up for the deficiencies of the poor. The king's uncles knew this would be difficult to bring about; and they had cauſed it to be ſpread in the principal towns how greatly the inhabitants would be oppreſſed by ſuch taxes, and that, as there muſt remain great ſums in the treaſury, the people ought to inſiſt on having an account of their expenditure from thoſe who had the management, ſuch as the archbiſhop of York, the duke of Ireland, ſir Simon Burley, ſir Michael de la Pole, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir Peter Gouloufre, ſir John Saliſbury, ſir John Beauchamp and the maſter of the wool-ſtaple; and, if theſe would render an honeſt account, there would be found money enough for the preſent demands of the kingdom. It is a well-known maxim, that no one pays willingly, or takes money from his purſe, if he can avoid it. Theſe rumours were ſoon ſpread throughout England, and eſpecially in London, which is the chief key of the realm, ſo that the people roſe in rebellion, to inquire into the government of the country, for that there had not for ſome time been any thing known concerning it.

The Londoners firſt addreſſed themſelves to Thomas of Woodſtock, duke of Gloceſter, though he was younger than the duke of York; for he

was

was much beloved for his valour, prudence and ſteadineſs in buſineſs. When they were in his preſence, they ſaid,—'My lord, the good city of London recommends itſelf to your care; and its citizens, as well as all England, entreat you would take upon you the government of the realm, and learn from thoſe who have poſſeſſed themſelves of the kingdom how it has been hitherto governed; for the common people make bitter complaints, that taxes upon taxes are continually impoſed, and that the kingdom, ſince the coronation of the king, has been more grievouſly oppreſſed, by theſe and other extraordinary aids, than for fifty years preceding it. No one knows how theſe ſums have been expended, nor what is become of them. You will be pleaſed to inquire into this, and provide a remedy, or things will turn out ill, for the diſcontents of the people are very ſtrong.'

The duke of Gloceſter replied,—'My good ſirs, I have attentively liſtened to what you have ſaid; but I alone can do nothing. I know you have well-founded cauſe of complaint, as well as the reſt of England; but notwithſtanding I am ſon to a king of England, and uncle to the preſent king, if I were to interfere by ſpeaking to him, he would not attend to me; for my nephew has counſellors near his perſon in whom he confides more than in himſelf, and theſe counſellors lead him as they pleaſe. If you wiſh to ſucceed in having your grievances redreſſed, you ſhould enter into a confederacy with the principal towns, and with ſome of the nobles and prelates, and come before the king, where

where my brother and myſelf will cheerfully meet you, and ſay to the king.—'Moſt dear lord, you have been crowned when very young, and have hitherto been very badly adviſed, nor have you attended to the affairs of your kingdom, from the mean and weak counſellors you have choſen. This has cauſed the miſmanagement of affairs, as you muſt have ſeen; and if God, out of his mercy, had not ſtretched forth his hand, the country muſt inevitably have been ruined. For which, moſt redoubted lord, we ſupplicate you, in the preſence of your uncles, as good ſubjects ſhould entreat their lord, that you attend to theſe matters, that the noble kingdom and crown of England, which has deſcended to you from the moſt powerful and gallant king this country ever poſſeſſed, may be ſupported in proſperity and honour, and the common people, who now complain, be maintained in their juſt rights and privileges. This you ſwore to perform on the day of your coronation. We alſo entreat that you would aſſemble the three eſtates of the realm, that they may examine into the late manner of your government. Should it have been managed in a manner becoming a perſon of your rank, thoſe who have governed will acquire profit and honour, and ſhall remain as long as they chooſe, and while it may be your good pleaſure, in their offices. But if thoſe who may be appointed to examine into theſe matters find any thing contrary to good government, they will provide a remedy by quietly diſmiſſing from your perſon thoſe who have ſo acted, and replacing them by others better qualified,

lified, but with your conſent firſt had, then that of your uncles and of the prelates and barons of the realm, who will pay attention in the choice to your honour and to that of your kingdom.'

'When you ſhall have made this remonſtrance to the king,' ſaid the duke of Gloceſter to the Londoners, 'he will give you an anſwer. If he ſhould ſay, 'We will conſider of it,' cut the matter ſhort, and declare you will not have any delay; and preſs it the more to alarm him, as well as his minions. Say, boldly, that the country will not longer ſuffer it; and it is wonderful they have borne it ſo long. My brother and myſelf will be with the king, and alſo the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the earls of Arundel, Saliſbury and Northumberland, but ſay nothing ſhould we not be preſent; for we are the principal perſonages in England, and will ſecond you in your remonſtrance, by adding, that what you require is but reaſonable and juſt. When he ſhall hear us thus ſpeak, he will not contradict us, unleſs he be very ill adviſed indeed, and will appoint a day accordingly. This is the advice and the remedy I offer you.'

The Londoners replied,—'My lord, you have loyally ſpoken; but it will be difficult for us to find the king and as many lords as you have named, at one time in his preſence.' 'Not at all,' ſaid the duke: 'St. George's day will be within ten days, and the king will then be at Windſor: you may be ſure the duke of Ireland and ſir Simon Burley will be there alſo. There will be many others. My brother, myſelf and the

the earl of Saliſbury will be there. Do you come, and you will act according to circumſtances.'

The Londoners promiſed to be at Windſor on St. George's day, and left the duke of Gloceſter well pleaſed with their reception. When that day came, the king of England held a grand feſtival, as his predeceſſors had done before him, and, accompanied by his queen and court, went to Windſor. On the morrow, the Londoners came thither with ſixty horſe, and thoſe from York and other principal towns in like numbers, and lodged themſelves in the town. The king was deſirous of leaving the place for another three leagues off, when he heard of the arrival of the commons of England, and ſtill more ſo, when told they wanted to ſpeak to him; for he dreaded greatly their remonſtrances, and would not have heard them: but his uncles and the earl of Saliſbury ſaid,—'My lord, you cannot depart, for they are deputed hither by all your principal towns. It is proper you hear what they have to ſay: you will then give them your anſwer, or take time to conſider of it.' He remained therefore, but ſore againſt his will.

The commons were introduced to the preſence, in the lower hall, without the new building, where the palace ſtood in former times. The king was attended by his two uncles, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the biſhop of Winchester, lord chancellor, the earl of Saliſbury, the earl of Northumberland, and ſeveral others of the nobility. The commons made their harangue to the king, by their ſpokeſman, a citizen of London,

London, called Simon de Sudbury, a man of ſenſe and oratory. He formed his ſpeech from what the duke of Gloceſter had ſaid to them; and, as you have heard that, I need not take more notice of it.

The king, having heard it, replied,—'Ye commons of England, your requeſts are great and important, and cannot be immediately attended to; for we ſhall not long remain here, nor are all our council with us: indeed the greater part are abſent. I therefore bid each of you return quietly to your homes, and there peaceably remain, unleſs ſent for, until Michaelmas, when the parliament ſhall be aſſembled at Weſtminſter. Come thither and lay your requeſts before us, which we will ſubmit to our council. What we approve ſhall be granted, and what we think improper refuſed. For think not we are to be ruled by our people. That has never been; and we can perceive nothing but what is right and juſt in our government, and in thoſe who govern under us.'

Upwards of ſeven inſtantly replied to the king, and ſaid,—'Moſt redoubted lord, under your grace's favour, your juſtice is weak, indeed, in the realm, and you know not what behoveth you to know; for you neither make inquiry, nor examine into what is paſſing; and thoſe who are your adviſers will never tell you, for the great wealth they are amaſſing. It is not juſtice, ſir king, to cut off heads, wriſts or feet, or any way to puniſh; but juſtice conſiſts in the maintaining the ſubject in his right, and in taking

taking care he live in peace, without having any cauſe of complaint. We muſt alſo ſay that you have appointed too long a day by referring us to Michaelmas. No time can be better than the preſent: we, therefore, unanimouſly declare, that we will have an account, and very ſhortly too, from thoſe who have governed your kingdom ſince your coronation, and know what is become of the great ſums that have been raiſed in England for theſe laſt nine years, and whither they have paſſed. If thoſe who have been your treaſurers ſhall give a juſt account, or nearly ſo, we ſhall be much rejoiced, and leave them in their offices. Thoſe who ſhall not produce honeſt acquittances for their expenditure ſhall be treated accordingly, by the commiſſioners that are to be nominated by you, and our lords your uncles.'

The king, on this, looked at his uncles to ſee if they would ſay any thing, when the duke of Gloceſter ſaid,—'That he ſaw nothing but what was juſt and reaſonable in the demands they had made: what do you ſay, fair brother of York?' 'As God may help me, it is all true,' he replied, as did the other barons who were preſent; but the king wiſhed them to give their opinions ſeparately. 'Sir,' added the duke of Gloceſter, 'it is but fair that you know how your money has been expended.' The king perceiving they were all united, and that his minions dared not utter one word, for they were overawed by the preſence of the nobles, ſaid, —'Well, I conſent to it: let them be ſent away for

for ſummer is now approaching, and the time for my amuſement in hunting.' Then, addreſſing the Londoners, he added, 'Would you have the matter inſtantly diſpatched?' 'Yes, we entreat it of you, noble king: we ſhall likewiſe beg of theſe lords to take part, more particularly our lords your uncles.'

The dukes replied, they would willingly undertake it, as well on the part of their lord and king, as for the country. The commons then ſaid; 'We alſo wiſh that the reverend fathers, the lord archbiſhop of Canterbury, and the biſhops of Lincoln and Wincheſter be parties.' They ſaid, they would cheerfully do ſo. When this was agreed to, they nominated the lords preſent, ſuch as the earls of Salisbury and Northumberland, ſir Reginald Cobham, ſir Guy de Bryan, ſir Thomas Felton, ſir Matthew Gournay, and ſaid there ſhould be from two to four of the principal perſons from each city or large town, who would repreſent the commons of England. All this was aſſented to, and the time for their meeting fixed for the week after St. George's day, to be holden at Weſtminſter; and all the king's miniſters and treaſurers were ordered to attend, and give an account of their adminiſtrations to the before-named lords. The king conſented to the whole, not through force, but at the ſolicitations and prayers of his uncles, the other lords and commons of England. It, indeed, concerned them to know how affairs had been managed, both in former times and in thoſe of the preſent day. All having been amicably

cably ſettled, the aſſembly broke up, and the lords, on leaving Windſor, returned to London, whither were ſummoned all collectors and receivers, from the different counties, with their receipts and acquittances, under pain of corporal puniſhment and confiſcation of goods.

CHAP. L.

THE COMMISSIONERS OF ACCOUNTS CONDEMN SIR SIMON BURLEY TO BE IMPRISONED IN THE TOWER OF LONDON.—SIR THOMAS TRIVET IS KILLED BY A FALL FROM HIS HORSE.—SIR WILLIAM ELMHAM IS ACQUITTED OF HAVING TAKEN MONEY FOR THE SURRENDER OF BOURBOURG AND GRAVELINES.

THE aſſembly of the commiſſioners of accounts was held at Weſtminſter, conſiſting of the king's uncles, the prelates, barons and deputies from the principal towns of England. It laſted upwards of a month. Some of thoſe who appeared before it, not producing fair or honourable accounts, were puniſhed corporally, and by confiſcation of whatever they poſſeſſed.

Sir Simon Burley was charged with defalcations to the amount of two hundred and fifty thouſand francs, notwithſtanding he had been tutor to the king and had aſſiſted him in the government from his earlieſt youth. When called upon to account for what had become of it, he caſt the blame on the archbiſhop of York and ſir William Neville, ſaying he

he had never acted but with them and by their advice, and in conjunction with the king's chamberlains, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir Robert Beauchamp, ſir John Saliſbury, ſir Nicholas Bramber and others; but thoſe, when examined, excuſed themſelves, and flung the whole fault on him.

The duke of Ireland ſaid to ſir Simon privately, —'I underſtand you are to be arreſted and ſent to priſon until you ſhall pay the ſum you are charged with. Do not diſpute the matter, but go whither they may order: I will make your peace with the king, though they had all ſworn to the contrary. You know the conſtable of France owes me forty thouſand francs for the ranſom of John of Blois, and this ſum he will ſhortly pay: I will offer the amount to the commiſſioners, which for the moment will ſatisfy them: but the king is ſovereign; he will pardon you all, for the balances muſt be paid to him and to none other.'

'If I did not depend,' replied ſir Simon Burley, 'that you would ſtrongly ſupport me with the king, and aſſiſt me perſonally in this matter, I would croſs the ſea and go to the king of Bohemia. I ſhould be well received there, and remain for a time until all this buſtle were blown over.' 'I will never forſake you,' ſaid the duke of Ireland: 'are we not companions, and equally implicated? You muſt aſk time for repayment. I know well that you can pay when you pleaſe, in ready money, one hundred thouſand francs. Do not fear death, for they will never puſh matters ſo far as that; and, before Michaelmas,

things ſhall have a different turn from what the lords think; let me only once have the king in my power, and I will have him, for all that he now does he is forced to. We muſt ſatisfy theſe curſed Londoners, and put an end to all this diſcontent they have raiſed againſt us and our friends.'

Sir Simon Burley put a little too much confidence in theſe words of the duke of Ireland, and preſented himſelf before the commiſſioners, when called upon. They ſaid,—'Sir Simon, you have been a knight who has done honour to our country, and were greatly beloved by our lord the late prince of Wales. You and the duke of Ireland have been the principal miniſters of the king. We have carefully examined all your accounts that have been laid before us, and muſt tell you, they are neither fair nor honourable, which has diſpleaſed us for the love we bear you. We have therefore unanimouſly reſolved that you be ſent to the Tower of London, there to be confined until you ſhall have repaid, in this chamber, according to our orders, the ſum you have received for the king and realm, and for which, from the examination of the treaſurer, you have never accounted: the ſum amounts to two hundred and fifty thouſand francs. Now, have you any thing to ſay in your defence?'

Sir Simon was much diſconcerted, and ſaid,—'My lords, I ſhall willingly obey, as it is proper I ſhould, your commands, and go whither you may pleaſe to ſend me. But I entreat that I may have a ſecretary allowed me to draw out an account

count of the great expenſes I have formerly been at in Germany and Bohemia, when negotiating the marriage of our king and lord. If I ſhould have received too much, grant me, through the king's grace and yours, that I may have a reaſonable time for repayment.' 'To this we agree,' replied the lords; and ſir Simon Burley was then conducted to the Tower.

The accounts of ſir Thomas Trivet and ſir William Elmham were next examined. They were not popular with any of the barons of England, nor with the people, on account of their conduct in Flanders; for it was ſaid no Engliſhman had ever made ſo ſhameful an expedition. The biſhop of Norwich and the governor of Calais, who at that time was ſir Hugh Calverley, had cleared themſelves from any blame: but the charge laid to the two knights, of taking money for the ſurrender of Bourbourg and Gravelines, prevented them doing the ſame; and ſome in England wanted to have their conduct (which has been before related) conſtrued into treaſon; and the knights had given ſecurity for their appearance, when called upon, to the king, his uncles and the council.

This charge was now renewed, and they were ſummoned before the commiſſioners. Sir William Elmham appeared; but ſir Thomas Trivet did not come, and I will tell you the cauſe. The ſame week the ſummons from the commiſſioners was brought to his houſe in the north, he had mounted a young horſe, to try him in the fields. This horſe ran away with him over hedge and

through buſhes, and at length fell into a ditch and broke the knight's neck. It was a pity, and his loſs was much bewailed by the good people of England. Notwithſtanding this, his heirs were forced to pay a large ſum of florins to what was called the king's council; but the whole management was well known to reſt with the uncles of the king and the commiſſioners they had nominated. For, although the duke of Gloceſter was the youngeſt of the king's uncles, he was the moſt active in buſineſs that concerned the country; and the better part of the prelates, nobles and commons looked up to him.

When the compoſition-money of the late ſir Thomas Trivet, who was killed as you have heard, was paid, the blame caſt on ſir William Elmham was much lightened. His former deeds in the Bordelois, Guienne and Picardy, where he had diſplayed much valour in ſupport of England, pleaded for him, having behaved like a gallant knight, ſo that nothing could be laid to his charge but having taken money for Bourbourg and Gravelines. But he excuſed himſelf by ſaying,—'My lords, when any one is placed as we were, in reſpect to theſe two towns, it appears to me (from what I have heard ſir John Chandos and ſir Walter Manny, who had abundance of good ſenſe and valour, ſay), that when two or three means offer, the one moſt profitable to ourſelves, and that which can hurt our enemies the moſt, ought ever to be adopted. Sir Thomas Trivet and myſelf, finding ourſelves ſurrounded, ſo that ſuccour could no way come to us, and that we

ſhould

ſhould not be able long to withſtand their aſſaults (for they were ſuch knights and ſquires as few in England ever ſaw, and in ſuch numbers, from the account of our herald, as to amount to ſixteen thouſand men at arms and forty thouſand others, while we were ſcarcely three hundred lances, and as many archers; our town was alſo ſo extenſive we could not attend to all parts of it, which we ſoon felt to our coſt, for, while we were defending one ſide, it was ſet on fire on another)—we became very much confuſed, which the enemy perceived. And in truth, the king of France and his council acted handſomely by granting us a truce; for if they had on the morrow renewed their attack, in the ſituation we were in, they muſt have had us at their mercy.

'They honourably treated with us, through the duke of Brittany, who took much trouble on the occaſion. We ought to have paid for this, but they gave us money; and, inſtead of being worſted by our enemies, we deſpoiled them. We certainly overreached them, when they paid us, and ſuffered us to depart ſafe and well, carrying away whatever we had gained by this expedition in Flanders. Beſides,' added ſir William, 'to purge myſelf from all blame, ſhould there be in England, or out of England, any knight or ſquire, except the perſons of my lords the dukes of York and of Gloceſter, who ſhall dare to ſay that I have acted diſloyally towards my natural lord the king, or have been any way guilty of treaſon, I am ready to throw down my glove, and with my body try the event by deeds of arms, ſuch as the judges may aſſign me,' This

This ſpeech and the known valour of the knig exculpated him, and freed him from all fear of death, which he was in danger of at the beginning. He returned to his eſtate, and was afterwards a renowned knight, much advanced, and of the king's council.

Sir Simon Burley was ſtill confined in the Tower, for he was mortally hated by the king's uncles and the commons of England. The king did every thing in his power to deliver him from priſon, during the time he reſided at Sheene; but the commiſſioners, being determined to oppreſs him, diſſembled, and ſaid they could not as yet ſet him at liberty, for his accounts were not cloſed.

The king, accompanied by the duke of Ireland, journeyed towards Wales, by way of Briſtol; and whereſoever he went he was followed by the queen, and all the ladies and damſels of her court.

CHAP. LI.

THE KING OF ENGLAND HAVING LEFT LONDON, SIR SIMON BURLEY IS BEHEADED, TO THE GREAT DISPLEASURE OF THE KING AND QUEEN.—A CHANGE OF THE MINISTRY.

ALTHOUGH the king of England had left London, his uncles there remained with their adviſers. You have often heard, that when any diſorder is in the head, all the other members of the body are affected by it, and that this ſickneſs muſt be purged away by ſome means or other.

other. I ſay this, becauſe the duke of Ireland was in ſuch favour with the king, that he managed him as he pleaſed, and governed him at will. Sir Simon Burley was alſo one of the principal adviſers; and between them both they ruled, for a long time, king and kingdom.

They were ſuſpected of having amaſſed very large ſums of money, and it was rumoured they had ſent great part of it for ſafety to Germany. It had alſo come to the knowledge of the king, his uncles, and the rulers of the principal towns in England, that great caſes and trunks had been ſecretly embarked from Dover-caſtle in the night-time, which were ſaid to contain this money ſent fraudulently abroad by them to foreign countries, in conſequence of which the kingdom was greatly impoveriſhed of caſh. Many grieved much at this, ſaying, that gold and ſilver were become ſo ſcarce as to occaſion trade to languiſh. Such ſpeeches increaſed the hatred to ſir Simon Burley, and the commiſſioners declared they thought he deſerved death. In ſhort, they, on finiſhing his accounts, condemned him to ſuffer this puniſhment, inſtigated thereto by a deſire to pleaſe the country, and by the archbiſhop of Canterbury, who related to the lords that ſir Simon wanted to remove the ſhrine of St. Thomas from Canterbury to Dover-caſtle, as he ſaid, for greater ſecurity, at the time the French invaſion was expected; but it was commonly believed that he meant to ſeize it, and carry it out of England. Many, now he was in priſon, came forward againſt him; and the knight was ſo over-

powered,

powered, that nothing he could ſay in his defen availed him; ſo that he was carried forth out the Tow r, and beheaded, as a traitor, in the ſquare before it. God have mercy on his miſdeeds! Notwithſtanding I thus relate his diſgraceful death, which I am forced to by my determination to inſert nothing but truth in this hiſtory, I was exceedingly vexed thereat, and perſonally much grieved; for in my youth I had found him a gentle knight, and, according to my underſtanding, of great good ſenſe. Such was the unfortunate end of ſir Simon Burley.

His nephew and heir, ſir Richard Burley, was with the duke of Lancaſter in Galicia, when this misfortune befel his uncle, and one of the moſt renowned in his army, after the conſtable; for he had once the chief command of the whole army, and inſtructed ſir Thomas Moreaux in his office of marſhal: he was likewiſe of the duke's council, and his principal adviſer. You may ſuppoſe that, when he heard of the diſgraceful death his uncle had ſuffered, he was mightily enraged; but, alas! this gallant knight died in his bed, in Caſtille, of ſickneſs, with very many more, as I ſhall fully relate when arrived at that part of my hiſtory.

When king Richard, who was amuſing himſelf in Wales, heard of the death of ſir Simon Burley, he was very wroth; for he had been one of his tutors and had educated him; and he ſwore it ſhould not remain unrevenged, for he had been cruelly put to death, and without the ſmalleſt plea of juſtice.

The

The queen alſo bewailed his loſs; for he had been the principal promoter of her marriage, and had conducted her from Germany to England. The king's council began now to be ſeriouſly alarmed, ſuch as the duke of Ireland, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir John Beauchamp, ſir John Saliſbury and ſir Michael de la Pole.

The archbiſhop of York, whoſe name was William Neville, brother to the lord Neville of Northumberland, was diſmiſſed from his office of lord treaſurer, which he had held a conſiderable time, and forbidden, by the duke of Gloceſter, if he valued his life, ever again to intermeddle with the affairs of England; but he might retire to his biſhoprick of York, or to any other part of his dioceſe, for that, of late, he had been by far too buſy. He was told that; from conſideration of his dignity and birth, many things had been overlooked that were highly diſgraceful to him; and that the greater part of the deputies from the cities and towns were for having him degraded from the prieſthood, and puniſhed in like manner to ſir Simon Burley. He ſoon left London, and went to reſide on his archbiſhoprick in the north, which was worth to him about forty thouſand francs a year. His whole family were much enraged, and thought his diſgrace had been cauſed by Henry of Northumberland, though he was his relation and neighbour.

The archbiſhop of Canterbury, who was valiant and learned, and much in the favour of the king's uncles, ſucceeded to the treaſurerſhip: he was of the family of the Montagues, and the earl of Saliſbury

liſbury was his uncle*. The commiſſioners appointed the earl of Saliſbury, the earl of Arundel, the earl of Northumberland, the earl of Devonſhire, the earl of Nottingham and the biſhop of Norwich, who was called ſir Henry de Spencer, the king's council; but the biſhop of Wincheſter retained his office of chancellor, and continued near the perſon of the king's uncles. The moſt renowned of the council, after the duke of Gloceſter, was ſir Thomas Montague, archbiſhop of Canterbury; and well was he deſerving of it, for the great pains he took to reform the abuſes of government, and withdraw the king from the management of his minions. He ſpoke very frequently on this ſubject to the duke of York, who replied,—'Archbiſhop, matters will, by degrees, turn out differently from what my nephew and the duke of Ireland imagine. But we muſt wait for a favourable opportunity, and not be too preſſing; for what is done in haſte is never well done. I agree with you, that if we had not, in time, taken up this buſineſs, the king would have been ſo governed, that the kingdom muſt have been ruined. The king of France and his council were well acquainted with our ſtate; and for this did they make ſuch immenſe preparations, to take the advantage to invade us.'

* This muſt be a miſtake. In 1381 William Courtney was archbiſhop of Canterbury, and in 1391 Thomas Fitzallan, ſon of the earl of Arundel.

CHAP. LII.

WHILE THE COUNCIL, ON THE STATE OF THE NATION, IS SITTING AT LONDON, KING RICHARD, BY THE ADVICE OF THE DUKE OF IRELAND, DETERMINES TO WAGE WAR AGAINST HIS UNCLES AND THE PRINCIPAL TOWNS.

IN like manner as the king's uncles and the new council of ſtate were deviſing at Weſtminſter on the means of reforming abuſes in the government, and of having the king and realm under their power, the duke of Ireland and his council were plotting day and night how they could keep their places, and deſtroy the uncles of the king, by means which I will now explain.

When king Richard, accompanied by his queen*, arrived at Briſtol, which is a handſome and ſtrong town, he fixed his reſidence in the caſtle. Thoſe in Wales, and at a diſtance, thought he had done ſo to favour the duke of Ireland, who had cauſed it to be reported that he intended going from thence to Ireland, and to aſſiſt him with money to increaſe his followers, for that had been agreed on by the parliament. It had been ordered that the duke, on ſetting out for Ireland, where he was to remain three years, ſhould have the command of five hundred men at arms and fifteen hundred archers, paid by England, and that money for this purpoſe ſhould be

* So ſays Jean Petit, "et la rayne aveques lui."

punctually

punctually remitted to him*. But the duke had no inclination to go thither; for, as the king was ſo young, he managed him as he pleaſed, and, ſhould he leave him, he was afraid the king's affection would be cooled. Add to this, he was ſo greatly enamoured with one of the queen's damſels, called the Landgravine, that he could never quit her. She was a tolerably handſome pleaſant lady, whom the queen had brought with her from Bohemia.

The duke of Ireland loved her with ſuch ardour, that he was deſirous of making her, if poſſible, his ducheſs by marriage. He took great pains to obtain a divorce from his preſent ducheſs, the daughter of the earl of Bedford, from Urban VI., whom the Engliſh and Germans acknowledged as pope. All the good people of England were much aſtoniſhed and ſhocked at this; for the ducheſs was grand-daughter of the gallant king Edward and the excellent queen Philippa, being the daughter of the princeſs Iſabella. Her uncles, the dukes of York and Gloceſter, were very wroth at this inſult; but, notwithſtanding their hatred which he held cheap, the duke of

---

* There is a variation in the copies of the original, as Jean Petit runs thus:—"When he departed from the king and his uncles, it was agreed with him that in caſe he ſhould go on this voyage, he ſhould have, at the charge of England, five hundred men at arms and fifteen hundred archers. And it was ordered that he ſhould abide there three years, and that he ſhould always be well paid." This reading appears to be ſimpler than that of the text. See Jean Petit's edition, vol. III. p. 46.

Ireland

Ireland was ſo ſmitten and blinded by his love, he was uſing every means to obtain a divorce, and had promiſed the lady he would make her his wife, if he had the king and queen's conſent, and a diſpenſation from Rome, which the pope would not dare refuſe him; for his preſent lady was a Clementiſt, and the lord de Coucy, her father, had made war in Italy for Clement, againſt Urban, which inclined the latter not to be overfond of him, and induced him to liſten too readily to the propoſals for a divorce. Thus was he urging on matters, according to his promiſe to the landgravine of Bohemia, and would not have any connection with his wife by legal marriage.

But this duke of Ireland had a mother living, the counteſs dowager of Oxford, who, ſo far from approving her ſon's conduct, greatly blamed him for his follies, ſaying that he would by them anger Heaven, who would one day puniſh him ſeverely, when it would be too late to repent. She had the ducheſs home with her, and gave her as handſome an eſtabliſhment as ſhe could, ſo that all who loved the young lady were pleaſed with this conduct.

In ſuch a ſituation was the kingdom of England; but, to bring its hiſtory to a concluſion, I will continue the ſubject from the information I then received. You have heard that the duke of Ireland kept cloſe to the king during his reſidence at Briſtol and in Wales, ſolely occupied night and day with the means of ſucceeding in his plans. He was aſſiduous in his attentions to the

the king and queen, and to all knights and ſquires who waited on them at Briſtol and at the hunts in that neighbourhood, to draw them over to his faction; for the king ſuffered him to act as he pleaſed.

The duke, during this period, took infinite pains in viſiting all the gentlemen near to Briſtol, and went frequently into Wales, where he complained to all who would liſten to him, gentlemen or others, that the king's uncles, from their ambition to obtain the government, had driven from the council the moſt noble and wiſeſt members, ſuch as the archbiſhop of York, the biſhop of Durham, the biſhop of London, ſir Michael de la Pole, ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir John Saliſbury, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir John Beauchamp and himſelf; that they had put to death, without any juſtice whatever, that valiant knight ſir Simon Burley; and, if they continued to govern as they had begun, they would ſoon deſtroy all England.

He repeated this ſo often, and with ſuch ſucceſs, that the greater part of the knights and ſquires of Wales and of the adjoining countries believed him. They came to Briſtol, and demanded from the king, if what the duke had told them had his approbation. The king replied, it had, and begged of them, from their affection to him, to put every confidence in the duke, for that he would avow whatever he ſhould do; adding, that in truth his uncles were too ambitious, and that he had his fears they intended to deprive him of his crown.

Thoſe

Thoſe from Wales, who had always loved the prince of Wales, father to the king, having heard of the tranſactions in London, were firmly perſuaded that the king and the duke of Ireland had been wronged, and demanded from the king how he wiſhed them to act. The king anſwered, 'he would gladly ſee the Londoners, who had been the chief movers in this buſineſs, puniſhed and brought to their ſenſes, as well as his uncles.'

The Welſhmen ſaid, they were bounden to obey his commands, for he was their king and ſovereign lord, to whom, and to none elſe, they owed faith and homage. They were therefore willing to go whitherſoever he would order them. The king and the duke of Ireland were well ſatisfied with this anſwer; and the latter, ſeeing the king take up the matter as perſonal to himſelf, and eager to attack his adverſaries, was extravagant in his joy, and ſaid to the council, 'they could not act better than return to London to ſhew their force, and, by fair or other means, bring the citizens back to their obedience; and he alſo ſaid, and always repreſented to the king, that whenever there were ſo many rulers in a kingdom it muſt be its ruin.'

The king ſaid, 'that his opinion was the ſame, and that, if hitherto he had ſuffered things to be ſo carried, he would not any longer, but bring forward ſuch a remedy that other countries ſhould take example from it.'

Now, conſider in your own mind if I had not good cauſe to ſay that England was, at this period,

riod, in the greateſt peril of being ruined paſt recovery. It certainly was, from the cauſes you have heard; for the king was exaſperated againſt his uncles and the principal nobility of the kingdom, and they were ſo likewiſe againſt him and many nobles of his party. The cities and towns were quarrelling with each other, and the prelates in mutual hatred, ſo that no remedy for all theſe evils could be looked for but from God alone.

The duke of Ireland, when he perceived he had gained the king, and the greater number of thoſe in Briſtol, Wales and the adjoining parts, proceeded to ſay to the king,—'My lord, if you will appoint me your lieutenant, I will lead twelve or fifteen thouſand men to London, or to Oxford, which is yours and my city, and ſhew my ſtrength to theſe Londoners and your uncles, who have treated you with ſuch indignity, and have put ſome of your council to death, and, by fair words or otherwiſe, reduce them to obedience.' The king replied, he was ſatisfied, adding, 'I now nominate you lieutenant-general of my kingdom, to aſſemble men wherever you can raiſe them, and to lead them whitherſoever you ſhall think it will be moſt for the advantage of our realm, that all may ſee the whole of it to be our inheritance and right. I order you to bear our banner, guidon, ſtandard, and other our proper habiliments of war, which we ourſelves ſhould have done, had we taken the field. I ſhould imagine, that all conditions of men, on perceiving

perceiving my banners, would flock to enrol themſelves under them, and would be fearful of incurring, by a contrary conduct, my diſpleaſure.' This ſpeech greatly rejoiced the duke of Ireland.

CHAP. LIII.

THE KING OF ENGLAND ISSUES HIS ORDERS FOR ALL CAPABLE OF BEARING ARMS IN THE NEIGHBOURHOOD OF BRISTOL TO MARCH TO LONDON.—SIR ROBERT TRESILIAN, SENT THITHER AS A SPY, IS DISCOVERED, AND BEHEADED BY COMMAND OF THE KING'S UNCLES.

THE king of England iſſued his ſummons to many great barons, knights and ſquires in Wales, in the country round Briſtol, and on the Severn-ſide. Some excuſed themſelves by ſending ſatisfactory reaſons; but others came and placed themſelves under the obedience of the king, notwithſtanding their conviction that it was impoſſible to augur any thing good from the enterpriſe.

While this army was collecting, the king and the duke, in a ſecret conference, determined to ſend one of their confidential friends to London, to obſerve what was going forward, and, if the king's uncles ſtill remained there, to diſcover what they were doing. After ſome conſideration, they could not think on a proper perſon

to ſend on this errand; when a knight, who was couſin to the duke, and of the king's as well as of his council, called ſir Robert Treſilian, ſtepped forth, and ſaid to the duke,—'I ſee the difficulty you have to find a truſty perſon to ſend to London: I will, from my love to you, riſk the adventure. The king and the duke, well pleaſed with the offer, thanked him for it. Treſilian left Briſtol diſguiſed like a poor tradeſman, mounted on a wretched hackney: he continued his road to London, and lodged at an inn where he was unknown; for no one could have ever imagined that one of the king's counſellors and chamberlains would have appeared in ſo miſerable a dreſs.

When in London, he picked up all the news that was public, for he could not do more, reſpecting the king's uncles and the citizens. Having heard there was to be a meeting of the dukes and their council, at Weſtminſter, he determined to go thither to learn ſecretly all he could of their proceedings. This he executed, and fixed his quarters at an ale-houſe right oppoſite the palace-gate: he choſe a chamber whoſe window looked into the palace-yard, where he poſted himſelf to obſerve all who ſhould come to this parliament. The greater part he knew, but was not, from his diſguiſe, known to them. He, however, remained there, at different times, ſo long that a ſquire of the duke of Gloceſter ſaw and knew him, for he had been many times in his company. Sir Robert inſtantly recollected him, and withdrew

from

from the window; but the ſquire, having his ſuſpicions, ſaid, 'Surely that muſt be Treſilian;' and to be certain of it, he entered the ale-houſe, and ſaid to the landlady, 'Dame, tell me, on your troth, who is he drinking above: is he alone or in company?' 'On my troth, ſir,' ſhe replied, 'I cannot tell you his name; but he has been here ſome time.'

At theſe words, the ſquire went up ſtairs, to know the truth, and, having ſaluted ſir Robert, found he was right, though he diſſembled by ſaying,—'God preſerve you, maſter! I hope you will not take my coming amiſs, for I thought you had been one of my farmers from Eſſex, as you are ſo very like him.' 'By no means,' ſaid ſir Robert: 'I am from Kent, and hold lands of ſir John Holland, and wiſh to lay my complaints before the council againſt the tenants of the archbiſhop of Canterbury, who encroach much on my farm.' 'If you will come into the hall,' ſaid the ſquire, 'I will have way made for you to lay your grievances before the lords.' 'Many thanks,' replied ſir Robert: 'not at this moment, but I ſhall not renounce your aſſiſtance.' At theſe words, the ſquire ordered a quart of ale, which having paid for, he ſaid, 'God be with you!' and left the ale-houſe. He loſt no time in haſtening to the council-chamber, and called to the uſher to open the door. The uſher, knowing him, aſked his buſineſs: he ſaid, 'he muſt inſtantly ſpeak with the duke of Gloceſter, on matters that nearly concerned him and the council.' The uſher,

on this, bade him enter, which he did, and made up to the duke of Gloceſter, ſaying, 'My lord, I bring you great news.' 'Of what?' replied the duke. 'My lord, I will tell it aloud; for it concerns not only you but all the lords preſent. I have ſeen ſir Robert Treſilian, diſguiſed like a peaſant, in an ale-houſe cloſe by the palace gate.' 'Treſilian!' ſaid the duke. 'On my faith,' my lord, 'it is true; and you ſhall have him to dine with you, if you pleaſe.' 'I ſhould like it much,' replied the duke; 'for he will tell us ſome news of his maſter, the duke of Ireland. Go, and ſecure him; but with power enough not to be in danger of failing.'

The ſquire, on theſe orders, left the council-chamber, and, having choſen four bailiffs, ſaid to them,—'Follow me at a diſtance; and, as ſoon as you ſhall perceive me make you a ſign to arreſt a man I am in ſearch of, lay hands on him, and take care he do not, on any account, eſcape from you.' The ſquire made for the ale-houſe where he had left ſir Robert, and, mounting, the ſtair-caſe to the room where he was, ſaid on entering,—'Treſilian, you are not come to this country for any good, as I imagine: my lord of Gloceſter ſends for you, and you muſt come and ſpeak with him.'

The knight turned a deaf ear, and would have been excuſed, if he could, by ſaying, 'I am not Treſilian, but a tenant of ſir John Holland.' 'That is not true,' replied the ſquire; your body is Treſilian's, though not your dreſs.' And, making the ſignal to the bailiffs, who were at the

the door, they entered the houſe and arreſted him, and, whether he would or not, carried him to the palace. You may believe there was a great crowd to ſee him; for he was well known in London, and in many parts of England.

The duke of Gloceſter was much pleaſed, and would ſee him. When in his preſence, the duke ſaid; 'Treſilian, what has brought you hither? How fares my ſovereign? Where does he now reſide? Treſilian finding he was diſcovered, and that no excuſes would avail, replied,—'On my faith, my lord, the king has ſent me hither to learn the news: he is at Briſtol, and on the banks of the Severn, where he hunts and amuſes himſelf. 'How!' ſaid the duke, 'you do not come dreſſed like an honeſt man, but like a ſpy. If you had been deſirous to learn what was paſſing, your appearance ſhould have been like that of a knight or a diſcreet perſon.' 'My lord,' anſwered Treſilian, 'if I have done wrong, I hope you will excuſe me; for I have only done what I was ordered.'

'And where is your maſter, the duke of Ireland?'—'My lord,' ſaid Treſilian, 'he is with the king, our lord.' The duke then added,—'We have been informed that he is collecting a large body of men, and that the king has iſſued his ſummons to that effect: whither does he mean to lead them?' 'My lord, they are intended for Ireland.'—'For Ireland!' ſaid the duke. 'Yes, indeed, as God may help me,' anſwered Treſilian.

The duke muſed a while, and then ſpoke; 'Treſilian, Treſilian, your actions are neither fair

fair nor honeſt; and you have committed a great piece of folly in coming to theſe parts, where you are far from being loved, as will be ſhortly ſhewn to you. You, and others of your faction, have done what has greatly diſpleaſed my brother and myſelf, and have ill-counſelled the king, whom you have made to quarrel with his chief nobility. In addition, you have excited the principal towns againſt us. The day of retribution is therefore come, when you ſhall receive payment; for whoever acts juſtly receives his reward: look to your affairs, for I will neither eat nor drink until you be no more.'

This ſpeech greatly terrified ſir Robert, (for no one likes to hear of his end) by the manner in which it was uttered. He was deſirous to obtain pardon, by various excuſes, and the moſt abject humiliation, but in vain; for the duke had received information of what was going on at Briſtol, and his excuſes were fruitleſs. Why ſhould I make a long ſtory? Sir Robert was delivered to the hangman, who led him out of the palace to the place of execution, where he was beheaded, and then hung by the arms to a gibbet. Thus ended ſir Robert Treſilian.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIV.

WHEN THE NEWS OF THE DEATH OF SIR ROBERT TRESILIAN IS BROUGHT TO THE ARCHBISHOP OF YORK AND SIR NICHOLAS BRAMBER, THEY CONFIRM THE KING IN HIS INTENTION OF MAKING WAR ON HIS UNCLES.—THE DUKE OF IRELAND, AS LIEUTENANT-GENERAL, LEADS THE ARMY TO OXFORD.

INTELLIGENCE was haſtily carried to king Richard at Briſtol, that ſir Robert Treſilian had been put to a ſhameful death. He took it ſorely to heart, and ſwore things ſhould not remain in the ſtate they were; for that his uncles were conducting themſelves ill, and putting to death, without the leaſt plea of juſtice, his knights and ſervants, who had loyally ſerved him and the prince his father, plainly ſhewing their intentions were to deprive him of his crown, and that ſuch conduct touched him too nearly not to reſent it.

The archbiſhop of York had been the chief of his council for a conſiderable time, and, being then with the king, ſaid,—'My lord, you aſk counſel, and I will give it you. Your uncles behave ſhamefully, and want to make the world believe you have only traitors near your perſon, and that you take counſel from none but them. Great danger now hangs over the country; for if the commons riſe, and the *no-*

bility

bility be united, much miſchief will enſue. I therefore adviſe, that you ſettle all theſe things by force: you are now in a very populous country: iſſue your ſummons for all capable of bearing arms, gentlemen and others, to join you here; and, when they be aſſembled, march them under the orders of the duke of Ireland, who will gladly take the command, towards London; and let there be no other banners but thoſe with your own arms, to ſhew more diſtinctly the buſineſs is your own. The whole country, on their line of march, will join them, and perhaps the Londoners alſo, who have no perſonal hatred to you, who have never done them any injury. All the miſchief that could have been done you has already been effected by your uncles. Here is ſir Nicholas Bramber, who has been frequently mayor of London, and whom you created a knight for the gallant ſervice he performed in former times*; conſult him, for he ought to be well acquainted with the Londoners, being a fellow-citizen, and muſt, likewiſe, have ſome ſteady friends among them. You run a riſk of loſing your kingdom from thoſe tumultuous and diſloyal proceedings.'

The king, on this, turned to ſir Nicholas Bramber, and deſired him to ſpeak. 'My lord,' ſaid ſir Nicholas, 'ſince you command me, I will ſpeak my ſentiments before theſe lords, according to the beſt of my judgment. In the firſt

* Alluding to his conduct at the time Wat Tyler inſulted the king in Smithfield.

place,

place, I do not believe, nor ever ſhall, that the majority of the Londoners are wanting in affection to our lord who is preſent. They greatly loved my lord, the prince his father, of happy memory; and they gave proofs of their loyalty, when the rabble of peaſants roſe in rebellion: for, to ſay the truth, had they been inclined to have joined them, there would have been an end of the king and monarchy. The uncles of the king have it now all before them, and laugh at the citizens, whom they make believe whatever they pleaſe; for there is no one to contradict them, or to ſhew what falſehoods they daily publiſh. They have put aſide all the king's officers, myſelf in the number, and replaced them with others of their way of thinking. They have ſent the king to a corner of his kingdom; and one cannot ſuppoſe any good will follow, for we are perfectly ignorant what their ultimate intentions may be. If matters continue in this ſtate much longer, the king will be driven out of his kingdom; for they act by force, and the king by kindneſs. Have they not already put to death that gallant knight ſir Simon Burley, who had performed ſuch meritorious ſervices beyond ſea? and have they not, publicly, imputed to him the greateſt falſehoods, which they knew to be untrue, ſuch as, that he intended to deliver to the French the town and caſtle of Dover, and that for that purpoſe, he had cauſed them to aſſemble at Sluys and other parts of Flanders? Have they not, alſo, in deſpite to the king, diſgracefully ſlain his knight, ſir Robert Treſilian? and they will treat

treat the reſt in the ſame manner the very inſtant they can lay hands on them: I therefore adviſe, that the king uſe rigorous meaſures.' It is well known throughout England that he is king; that he was educated by our late valiant and good king Edward, at Weſtminſter, who made all his ſubjects, great and ſmall, ſwear obedience to him as their king, after his deceaſe, which oath the king's uncles alſo took. It appears to many, if they dare ſpeak out, that he is not now conſidered as king, nor does he keep the ſtate or manner of a king; for he is not ſuffered to act as he pleaſes: they have only allowed him and his queen a penſion, and plainly ſhew them, that they have not ſenſe to govern the realm, and that their whole council is made up of traitors and evil-deſigning men. I ſay, therefore, that ſuch conduct is not longer to be borne; and I would rather die than remain in ſuch a ſtate of danger, and ſee the king thus treated, and ruled as he is by his uncles.'

The king interrupted him by ſaying,—'What is now doing does not pleaſe us; and I tell you, that the advice you have given ſeems to me both honourable and good for us and for our realm.'

The conference now broke up; but not before the duke of Ireland was ordered, as king's lieutenant, to march, with all the force he could collect, towards London, to try the courage of the citizens, and ſee if, by negotiation and the greateſt promiſes on the part of the king, he could not turn them to his faction. It was not long before the duke, with fifteen thouſand men, left Briſtol on his march to Oxford,

ford, where they quartered themſelves, and in the country round about. They bore banners and pennons with only the arms of England, for the king would have it known it was his perſonal quarrel.

News was carried to the dukes of York and Gloceſter, that the duke of Ireland was on his march to London with fifteen thouſand men; that they were already at Oxford, and that he bore the king's own banners. It was time for them to conſider how to act: they ſummoned all the principal leaders in London for wealth or power to a conference at Weſtminſter, wherein they told them how the duke of Ireland was marching againſt them with a large force. The citizens, like perſons prepared to obey the will of the king's uncles, for they were in truth all ſo inclined, replied,—'Be it ſo, in God's name: if the duke of Ireland demand battle from us, he ſhall have it. We will not ſhut a gate for his fifteen thouſand men: no, nor for twenty thouſand, if he had them.'

The dukes were much contented with this anſwer, and inſtantly employed numbers of perſons to aſſemble knights and ſquires from all parts, and archers from the principal towns. Thoſe whom the dukes had ſummoned obeyed, as was juſt, for they had ſworn ſo to do. Men came from the counties of Norwich, Kent, Southampton, from Arundel, Saliſbury and the country round London. Many knights and ſquires came thither alſo, without knowing whither they were to be ſent or conducted.

CHAP.

CHAP. LV.

THE DUKE OF IRELAND SENDS THREE KNIGHTS TO LONDON TO LEARN INTELLIGENCE.—THE DUKES OF YORK AND GLOCESTER TAKE THE FIELD AGAINST THE DUKE OF IRELAND AND HIS ARMY.

I WILL now ſay ſomething of the duke of Ireland, who had fixed his quarters at Oxford. He had indeed fifteen thouſand men, but the greater part had joined him more through conſtraint than good-will. The duke, to ſound the Londoners, reſolved to ſend thither ſir Nicholas Bramber, ſir Peter Gouloufre and ſir Michael de la Pole: they were to enter the town by the Thames, and to hoiſt the king's flag, and obſerve how the citizens, on ſeeing it, would act.

Theſe three knights, in compliance with the duke's orders, left Oxford with only thirty horſe, and rode ſecretly to Windſor, where they lay that night. On the morrow, they croſſed the Thames at the bridge of Staines, and dined in the king's palace at Shene, where they remained until late in the evening, when they departed and rode for another of the king's palaces at Kennington, nearer London, three leagues diſtant, where they left their horſes, and, having entered boats, took advantage of the tide, and paſſed through London-bridge unobſerved,

obſerved, for the watch had not any ſuſpicions of their arrival.

They entered the Tower of London, and found the governor whom the king had appointed. From him they learnt many things relative to the king's uncles, and what was paſſing in London. He told them, they had run great riſks in coming to him. 'How ſo?' ſaid they. 'We are knights attached to the king's perſon, and may ſurely lodge ourſelves in any of his caſtles.' 'You will not find things ſo,' anſwered the governor; 'for though this town and all within it are willing to ſubmit themſelves to the obedience of the king, they will only do ſo as long as he will allow himſelf to be governed by his uncles, and no longer. What I tell you is for your welfare; and I am bound to adviſe you, as far as my abilities and underſtanding will enable me; for I ſuſpect that when day ſhall return to-morrow, if it pleaſe God, and news get abroad that there are arrived in the Tower perſons on the part of the king, you will ſee this caſtle beſieged by the citizens on all ſides, who will not depart until they have gained admittance and have ſeen who are here lodged. Should they find you, they will carry you to the king's uncles, and you may gueſs what will be the reſult. I am ſatisfied they are ſo much enraged againſt the duke of Ireland, and the other adviſers of the king, that if once they lay hold of you, you will never eſcape with life. Conſider well what I have ſaid, for it is all true.'

The

The three knights, who thought they ſhould do wonders, were in deſpair at what they heard: they held a council, and determined to remain where they were until the morrow, but in ſo ſecret a manner that none ſhould know of their arrival. The governor loyally promiſed to aſſiſt them to the utmoſt of his power, and, in their preſence, took poſſeſſion of all the keys that gave admittance. When day came, the three knights held another council, on their future proceedings; and, having well conſidered their ſituation, they were afraid of waiting until it ſhould be known they were in the Tower, for they were convinced they would be ſhut up in it; ſo that when it was dark, and the tide flowing, they embarked in a large boat, and left the Tower, without having dared to diſplay the king's banners. They ſlept that night at Kennington, and on the morrow at day-break, mounted their horſes and rode by Chertſey to Windſor, where they dined and lay.

The next day they arrived at Oxford, where was the duke of Ireland and his army: they told all that had paſſed, which you have heard; and that, although they were received into the Tower of London, they dared not abide there. The duke was mightily caſt down on hearing this, and knew not what to ſay, nor how to act; for he was already ſenſible that the force he had aſſembled were not all of the ſame way of thinking, nor well affected to his cauſe: not knowing whether to ſtay where he was or return to the king, he called a council of his knights.

The

The council determined, that ſince the king had appointed him lieutenant-general, to puniſh all who were in rebellion, he muſt keep the field; for, ſhould he act otherwiſe, he would be greatly blamed, incur the indignation of the king, and prove clearly that he did not think the cauſe juſt or good; and that it would be better to riſk the event, and die with honour, than ſhew any want of courage. He was adviſed to inform the king of his ſituation, and to be thankful he was able to keep his ground without any oppoſition, for none had hitherto advanced to meet him.

The duke ſent meſſengers from Oxford to the king, to ſignify his ſituation, and to entreat he would ſend him more men, which he did.

When the dukes of York and Gloceſter heard at London, that the duke of Ireland was at Oxford with a powerful army, they called a council to conſider how to act. All the chief lords of their party were preſent, ſuch as the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the earls of Arundel, Saliſbury, Northumberland, and many other great barons, with the whole magiſtracy of London. It was there reſolved, (for the duke of Gloceſter would have it ſo) inſtantly to prepare and take the field, and that the mayor of London ſhould arm by conſtablewicks, all ſuch as he might think capable of aſſiſting them; for he declared he would march to meet the duke of Ireland, and fight with him wherever he ſhould find him.

The mayor of London was himſelf a ſoldier, and

and he only ſelected his men from thoſe between twenty and forty years of age; and the lords above mentioned had at leaſt one thouſand men at arms, retainers on them.

This army marched from London, and lodged at Brentford and the adjoining villages; on the next day at Colebrook, their force increaſing all the way. They followed the road to Reading, to gain a paſſage over the Thames; for the bridges of Staines and Windſor had, by command of the duke of Ireland, been broken down, by which they had a better and more level country for their march. The duke of Ireland, hearing they were faſt approaching Oxford, was much alarmed, and demanded counſel. He was adviſed to draw up his army in battle-array, with the king's banners diſplayed in front; and if it pleaſed God, the day would be his, for he had a good cauſe.

This plan was followed: the trumpets ſounded to arm, and march out of Oxford, which was done, and the army drawn up with the king's banners diſplayed. The day was delightful, and the weather clear and pleaſant.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

THE KING'S UNCLES GAIN A VICTORY OVER THE DUKE OF IRELAND, WHO SAVES HIMSELF BY FLIGHT WITH OTHERS OF HIS ARMY.

NEWS was brought to the duke of Gloceſter, who was encamped in a handſome mead along a river that falls into the Thames, three leagues from Oxford, that the duke of Ireland had taken the field, and had drawn up his force in order of battle. The duke was well pleaſed with this intelligence, and ſaid he would offer him combat, but they muſt croſs the Thames.

The trumpets ſounded to diſlodge, and the army was formed as if for immediate battle. They were within two leagues of the enemy, lying in ambuſh, until they could croſs the river. The duke of Gloceſter ſent ſcouts to have the fords examined, who brought word the river had not, for thirty years, been ſo low as it then was. The ſcouts after this eaſily croſſed, and advanced to obſerve the poſition and countenance of the enemy.

On their return, they ſaid to the duke,—'My lord, God and the river are for you: it is ſo low, it does not reach the bellies of our horſes. We have ſeen the army of the duke of Ireland, which is well and handſomely drawn up. We know not if the king be there in per-

ſon, but his banners are; and we could not perceive any other banner than thoſe of the king, emblazoned with the arms of England and France.' The duke replied,—'God aſſiſt us! my brother and ſelf have a right to thoſe arms. Let us advance, in the name of God and St. George; for I will have a nearer look at them.' His men began their march, and in higher ſpirits on knowing the river was ſo eaſy to be croſſed. The horſe paſſed firſt, and then the main body.

When the duke of Ireland was told that the king's uncles had paſſed the Thames with their army, and that ſhortly there muſt be a battle, he was much frightened; for he well knew, that if he were taken by the duke of Gloceſter, he would not accept of any ſum for his ranſom, but put him inſtantly to a diſgraceful death. He called, therefore, ſir Peter Gouloufre and ſir Michael de la Pole, and ſaid to them,—'My courage certainly faileth me this day; for I dare not abide the event of a battle with the king's uncles, who, if they take me, will put me to a ſhameful death. How the devil could they have croſſed the Thames? This is a bad omen for us.' 'What do you intend to do?' aſked the two knights. 'I mean to ſave myſelf: do you the ſame,' added the duke, 'and the whole army, if it can.' 'Well,' replied the knights, 'let us keep on one of the wings, and we ſhall have two cords to our bow. We ſhall ſee how our men behave: if they do well, we will remain, for the honour of the king who has ſent

us

us hither: if they be defeated, we can make off, and have the advantage of going whitherſoever we like.'

This plan was adopted; and the duke changed his horſe, for a very active one, as did alſo the knights. They rode round the army, ſhewing a good countenance, and telling the men to behave well; that they ſhould have the day, if it pleaſed God and St. George, for they had the right; and the quarrel was the king's, which was to their advantage.

Thus diſſembling, they got out of the crowd, and, making for a corner of the army, formed part of a wing. They had ſcarcely done ſo, when the dukes of York and Gloceſter, and the other lords, were ſeen advancing, with banners diſplayed, and trumpets ſounding. The king's army no ſooner perceived their array than they were panic-ſtruck, quitted their ranks, and turned their backs; for it was the general report, that the duke of Ireland and his friends had fled. All was now in diſorder; every one running away for the faſteſt, without making the ſmalleſt defence. The duke and his knights were ſoon at a diſtance, for they were not deſirous of returning to Oxford.

The duke of Gloceſter on ſeeing the condition of the king's army, felt compaſſion, and would not do the ill he might; for he knew the greater part had been aſſembled through fear, or by the excitement of the duke of Ireland. He therefore ſaid to his men,—'Sirs, the day is

ours; but I forbid, under pain of death, that any of our enemies be ſlain unleſs he make a defence. If you find knights or ſquires, take them and bring them to me.'

This order was obeyed: few were killed except in their flight, by riding over or againſt each other. Sir John, called the Little Beauchamp, and ſir John Saliſbury, were made priſoners in the purſuit, and brought to the duke of Gloceſter, to his great pleaſure.

The lords marched to Oxford, where they found the gates open; and thoſe who could do ſo lodged themſelves there, though much ſtraightened. When the duke of Gloceſter inquired if the duke of Ireland were taken, he was told that he had eſcaped. The duke remained two days at Oxford, when he gave liberty for the men at arms to return to their homes, after having thanked them for their ſervices. He told the mayor of London and the leaders of the bands, that they might now return to London, which they cheerfully did, and thus this expedition ended.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

THE DUKE OF IRELAND WITH SOME OF HIS COMPANIONS ESCAPES INTO HOLLAND.--THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY IS SENT BY THE DUKES OF YORK AND GLOCESTER TO TREAT WITH THE KING.—HE CONDUCTS HIM WITH HONOUR TO LONDON.

I WILL now ſay what became of the duke of Ireland, ſir Peter Gouloufre and ſir Michael de la Pole, on the day on which they had, like their army, ſaved themſelves by flight. In truth, this was wiſely done; for, had they been taken, they would have been put to death without mercy. I do not believe they fled to the king at Briſtol: if they did, they made no long ſtay, but haſtened out of England as quickly as they could. I heard that they rode through Carliſle to Edinburgh, where they embarked on board a veſſel bound for Holland and the Texel, and landed at Dordrecht. They were much rejoiced at thus being in a place of ſafety; and it was told me, that the duke of Ireland had, for a long time before, made large depoſits of money at Bruges, by means of the Lombards, to be prepared for every event; for though he knew his power over the king of England, he was much afraid of the nobles and the people. During his proſperity he had made very ample proviſion of money in Flanders and in other places,

places, where he thought he might need it. I heard, alſo, that the firſt payment of ſixty thouſand francs, for the ranſom of John of Brittany, was waiting his orders, and the time was nearly elapſed for the receipt of the other ſixty thouſand francs. He had, therefore, provided himſelf with money for a long time.

When duke Albert of Bavaria, who was regent of Hainault, Holland, and Zealand, for his brother count William, then alive, was informed that the duke of Ireland had fled from England, and had taken up his reſidence at Dordrecht, he muſed a while, and thought it improper he ſhould make any long ſtay there. He had quitted England as a fugitive; and was in the ill favour of his couſin-germans, the dukes of York and Gloceſter, to whom he owed love and affection: he had, beſide, behaved ſhamefully to his ducheſs, who was the daughter of his couſin, the princeſs Iſabella of England.

In conſequence, he ſent to tell the duke, that ſince he had diſpleaſed his fair couſins of England, and had broken his marriage to connect himſelf with another woman, he muſt inſtantly leave his country and ſeek other quarters; for he would never ſuffer the duke of Ireland to inhabit any town of his. When he received this order, he was much alarmed leſt he ſhould be arreſted and given up to his enemies, and humbled himſelf exceedingly to thoſe who brought the order, ſaying he would cheerfully obey the duke's commands. He inſtantly directed

rected all his accounts to be ſettled and paid, and embarked on board a veſſel, with attendants for Utrecht, which is a town ſolely dependant on its biſhop, where he arrived, and tarried there until other intelligence was brought him. We will now leave him, and return to the affairs of England.

When the army of the barons had been diſbanded at Oxford, I know not if the dukes of York and Gloceſter and the archbiſhop of Canterbury did not remain there ſome days longer; during which time the two knights, ſir John Saliſbury and the little Beauchamp, were beheaded. After this execution they returned to London, where they ſtaid ſome time, expecting to hear from the king; but all they learnt was that he continued in Briſtol. It was determined in council, at Weſtminſter, through the advice of the archbiſhop of Canterbury, to ſend a deputation from the chief barons to the king to remonſtrate with him, in an amicable manner, on his oppoſition to the principal perſons of his kingdom, who were naturally bound to guard his honour, and for having placed his confidence in a ſet of minions; which conduct had nearly loſt him his crown. While this was going forward in the council, ſir Nicholas Bramber had been taken in Wales, and brought to London. The king's uncles were rejoiced at this, and ſaid they ſhould not let him wait long, but that he ſhould ſuffer a ſimilar death to his friends. Sir Nicholas, unable to offer any thing

to prevent his execution, was led to the uſual place, without the town, and there beheaded.

He was lamented by ſome of the citizens, for he had, in former times, been their mayor, and had, during that time, well and honeſtly governed the city. He had alſo been of eſſential ſervice to the king at the time of the peaſants' rebellion, by ſlaying, with his own hand, Liſter; which diſmayed the inſurgents greatly, and put them to flight; and for this the king had created him a knight. He was beheaded like the others, for having too readily put his faith in the duke of Ireland.

The king's uncles ſeeing that now all thoſe of the king's council whom they hated were either dead or had quitted the country, thought it time to put the government on a ſtable footing; for, notwithſtanding they had put to death, or baniſhed, all who were obnoxious to them, they never intended to deprive the king of his crown, but only to reform and regulate his government more to his own and country's honour. They therefore ſaid to the archbiſhop of Canterbury,—'You will go with your ſtate to Briſtol, where you will find the king, and remonſtrate with him on the affairs of his realm, and the condition they are now in: recommend us to him, and ſay, that we entreat he will not put any belief in what he may hear to our diſcredit: for he has too long done ſo, againſt his own honour and profit, as well as to the hurt of the kingdom. You will likewiſe ſay, that we and the

good

good city of London beg he will return hither, where he will be received with the utmoſt joy; and we will agree to his having the nomination of his council in any way moſt agreeable to him. We charge you, however, archbiſhop, on no account to return without him, for thoſe who are now attached to him will be made diſcontented. Tell him alſo, not to be angered for ſuch traitors as were near his perſon, who may have been ſlain or driven out of the kingdom, for by them his crown was in danger of being loſt.'

The archbiſhop promiſed to accompliſh the matter as well as he was able, and, having ſoon made his preparations, ſet out for Briſtol in grand array, ſuch as became ſo reverend a prelate, and fixed his lodgings in the town. The king lived very privately, for all thoſe who uſed to be with him, were either dead or baniſhed, as you have heard. The archbiſhop was one whole day and two nights in the town before the king would ſee him, ſo ſorely vexed was he with his uncles for having driven away the duke of Ireland, whom he loved above all mankind, and for having put to death his chamberlains and knights. At length, he was ſo well adviſed that he admitted the archbiſhop to his preſence. On his entrance, he humbled himſelf much before the king, and then addreſſed him warmly on the ſubjects the dukes of York and Gloceſter had charged him with. He gave him to underſtand, that if he did not return to London, according to the entreaties of his uncles, the citizens of London and the greater part of his

ſubjects,

ſubjects, he would make them very diſcontented; and he remonſtrated, that without the aid of his uncles, barons, prelates, knights and commons from the chief towns, he would be unable to act, or to have any compliance given to his will. This he had been charged to tell him, and likewiſe that he could not more rejoice his enemies, nor more effectually hurt his country, than by making war on his friends.

The young kin was inclined to liſten to the arguments of the archbiſhop; but the inſult that had been offered him, by beheading thoſe of his council in whom he had no fault to find, was too freſh in his memory for him inſtantly to comply. Many plans were propoſed to him: at laſt, by the good advice of the queen, and of the moſt prudent of his counſellors, who had remained with him, ſuch as ſir Richard Stenor and others, he reſtrained his choler, and ſaid to the archbiſhop, that he would cheerfully accompany him to London. My lord of Canterbury was highly pleaſed on hearing this; and he gained much honour by having brought matters to ſo happy a concluſion. The king did not remain at Briſtol long after this, but, leaving there his queen, ſet out with his retinue towards London, the archbiſhop accompanying him. On his arrival at Windſor, he ſtopped three whole days.

When news was brought to London that the archbiſhop of Canterbury had ſo far ſucceeded in his miſſion, that the king was on his return to the city, the whole town was rejoiced; and

they

they determined to go out to meet and conduct him, in the moſt honourable manner, to his palace. The day on which he left Windſor, the whole road from London to Brentford was covered with people on foot and horſeback. The dukes of York and Gloceſter, and prince John of York, the earls of Arundel, Saliſbury, Northumberland, and many barons and prelates, went, in great ſtate, to conduct the king. They met him within two miles from Brentford, and received him moſt affectionately, as good ſubjects ſhould their lord.

The king, who had their late proceedings ſtill rankling in his heart, ſcarcely ſtopped when he met them, nor caſt his eyes towards them. The perſon he talked the moſt to on his road was the biſhop of London. On their arrival in Weſtminſter, the king diſmounted at his palace, which had been prepared for him. He there partook of wines and ſpices, as did his uncles, the barons, prelates and knights who were entitled to the honour. Several of them now took leave, and thoſe who reſided in London went home, but the king's uncles, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, and the whole of the council remained to keep him company, to be on better terms together, and to conſult on the affairs of the nation, for they had formed their plans, and were lodged, ſome in the palace, and others in the abbey.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVIII.

THE KING, BY THE ADVICE OF HIS UNCLES AND COUNCIL, SUMMONS THE NOBILITY AND COMMONERS OF THE REALM TO A PARLIAMENT AT WESTMINSTER, AND TO RENEW THEIR HOMAGE TO HIM.

A SPECIAL parliament being ordered to meet at Weſtminſter, all the barons, prelates, knights and chief citizens from the principal towns were ſummoned to attend, and all who held fiefs from the king. The reaſon for this parliament being made ſo general, was that the archbiſhop of Canterbury had remonſtrated in the council, and to the king's uncles, that when they had crowned king Richard, though all who held fiefs under him had made their homage, and held their lands accordingly, he was not of a proper age legally to receive their oaths. A king by right muſt be twenty-one years of age before he can juſtly govern the kingdom, and, until that time, ſhould be under the tutelage of his uncles, if he have any, or under thoſe of his ſubjects the neareſt related to him. The archbiſhop added, that as now the king was of the proper age, he adviſed, for greater ſecurity, all who held any lands under him ſhould renew their homage, and acknowledge him for their lord.

This opinion of the archbiſhop was acceded

to

to by the king's uncles, and was the cauſe of ſo general a ſummons being ſent abroad for all perſons to attend this parliament. Every one having obeyed, London and Weſtminſter were much crowded.

On the day appointed, the king heard maſs royally clothed, with the crown on his head, in the chapel of the palace*, which is very handſome and richly decorated. The archbiſhop of Canterbury ſaid maſs, and performed divine ſervice. He was attentively heard, for he was an excellent preacher.

When the ſervice was over, the king's uncles kiſſed him, in ſign of homage, and ſwore faith and duty to him for ever. Then came the barons, prelates, and all who held any thing under him, and with joined hands, as was becoming vaſſals, ſwore faith and loyalty, and kiſſed him on the mouth. It was viſible that the king kiſſed ſome heartily, others not; for, though he checked himſelf as much as poſſible, all were not in his good graces; but he diſſembled, for he wiſhed not to act contrary to his uncles. If he had poſſeſſed the power, he would not have behaved thus, but have wreaked a cruel revenge on thoſe who had, as he thought,

* This chapel is at the preſent period the houſe of commons. When it was enlarged for the admiſſion of the members from Ireland on the union, many of the paintings and other ornaments were diſcovered, and have been engraven and publiſhed.

ſo undeſervedly put to death ſir Simon Burley and his other knights.

The archbiſhop of York was ſummoned by the council to attend to do his homage, and purge himſelf from the things that had been laid to his charge; for he had always been a partiſan of the duke of Ireland, and in oppoſition to the king's uncles. When he received this ſummons, knowing he was not beloved by the dukes of York or Gloceſter, he was fearful of the event, and therefore ſent his nephew, the ſon of lord Neville, to make his excuſes. He inſtantly ſet out for London, and, on his arrival, waited on the king firſt, to whom he made excuſes for his uncle, and performed, as proxy, the homage of the archbiſhop.

The king received his excuſes, for he loved this archbiſhop more than that of Canterbury, and bore him out before the council, otherwiſe he would have been heavily fined: through attention to the king, the council admitted his excuſes, and he was ſuffered to remain in his dioceſe. For a long time, however, he was afraid to reſide at York, but lived at Newcaſtle on Tyne, near the caſtles of his brother Neville and couſins.

Thus were affairs in England; but the king had not, for ſome time, the command of his council, which was under the controul of his uncles, and the barons and prelates before named. We will now return to what was going forward in Caſtille and Portugal.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIX.

THE KING OF PORTUGAL AND DUKE OF LANCASTER UNITE THEIR FORCES.—WHEN DISTRESSED TO CROSS THE RIVER DUERO, A GALICIAN SQUIRE, PRISONER OF WAR, DIRECTS THEM TO A FORD.

IT is right, ſince the matter requires it, that I now ſay ſomething of the expedition of the duke of Lancaſter, and how he perſevered in it, this ſeaſon, in Galicia. I will continue it from where I left off, as I have a great deſire to complete its hiſtory.

When the duke and his army had conquered the town and caſtle of Orenſe, they halted there four days to refreſh themſelves, as there were plenty of proviſions. On the fifth day, they departed, taking the road to Noya. They quartered themſelves, for four days, in a large meadow along the river ſide; but the ground was already burnt up by the great heat of the ſun, and the water was ſo bad that the horſes would ſcarcely drink it: many that did ſo died. Orders were given to diſlodge and return to Orenſe; for the marſhals, ſir Thomas Moreaux and ſir Richard Burley, had declared the caſtle of Noya to be impregnable but by a long ſiege, with great expenſe of money, and many aſſaults.

The duke of Lancaſter, likewiſe, when there, received intelligence of the approach of the king of Portugal and his army, conſiſting of three thouſand ſpears and ten thouſand ſerviceable

able men: ſo that, when the two armies ſhould be united, ſomething eſſential might be done; for the duke had with him fifteen hundred knights and ſquires and ſix thouſand archers. This intelligence greatly pleaſed the duke: he decamped from before Noya, where he had done nothing, and returned to Orenſe. He ſent for his ducheſs and ladies, declaring he would there wait the arrival of the king of Portugal.

The king of Portugal and his marſhals, having taken poſſeſſion of Ferrol, marched for Orenſe to meet the duke of Lancaſter. On their road, they came to Ville-de-Padron, which, at firſt, ſhewed ſymptoms of rebellion, but, when the army appeared, they ſubmitted. The king and his army remained in the town and adjoining country fifteen days, and greatly waſted its proviſions, notwithſtanding a ſufficiency came to them from Portugal. Galicia was ruined by theſe two armies; and the weather was now become ſo exceedingly hot, that none could venture abroad, after eight o'clock in the morning, without riſk of death.

While the duke and ducheſs of Lancaſter remained in Orenſe, their men and horſes were ſuffering greatly for want of forage and water: there were neither freſh graſs nor green food, for the ground was too parched for any ſeeds to ſpring. The whole country was burnt up; and the Engliſh were forced to ſend their foragers twelve, ſixteen, nay twenty leagues, for food for themſelves and horſes. Conſider what their difficulties muſt have been. The knights and ſquires of England found the

the wines ſo ſtrong and ardent; that they affected their heads, ſtomachs and bowels, and they had not any remedy; for there was a great ſcarcity of good water to temper them with, or to cool them. Their food was contrary to what they had always been accuſtomed to; for in their own country they live at their eaſe, whilſt now they were burnt with external and internal heat. The greateſt lords were in the utmoſt poverty and diſtreſs; and ſuch effects as were natural, followed, which I ſhall relate to you.

The Engliſh knights and ſquires, ſeeing their difficulties increaſe, from the ſcarcity of forage and the extreme heat of the weather, began to murmur and ſay,—'Our expedition ſeems drawing to a poor end; for we remain too long in one place.' 'That is true,' replied others; 'and we have another thing much againſt us; we have brought women, who only wiſh to remain quiet; and for one day that they are inclined to travel, they will repoſe fifteen. It is this which has checked us, and will be our deſtruction; for if, on our landing at Corunna, we had advanced into the country, we ſhould have ſucceeded in putting it under our obedience; for none would have dared to oppoſe us: but theſe long reſidences have encouraged our enemies, who have ſtrengthened their ſtrong places, and reinforced their towns and caſtles with men at arms from France; and have alſo poſted them in the narrow paſſes, and along the rivers to guard and defend them. They will defeat us without a battle; for they

know it would be more to their advantage to decline it. This kingdom of Caſtille is not ſo pleaſant a country to make war in as France, where there are plenty of large villages, a fair country, fine rivers, ponds, rich paſtures, and agreeable and ſubſtantial wines for men at arms to refreſh themſelves with, and a ſun and climate finely temperate; but here every thing is the reverſe.' 'What the deuce,' ſaid others, 'what buſineſs had the duke to bring his wife and daughters with him, ſince he came hither for conqueſt? It was quite unreaſonable, for they have been a great hindrance to him. It is well known throughout all Caſtille, that he and his brother are the lawful heirs of the crown, in right of their wives, who were daughters of don Pedro; but, with regard to the conqueſt or the ſurrender of any towns, ladies can do but little.' This was the language held in different parts of the Engliſh army, by many knights and ſquires when among themſelves.

They were much rejoiced on learning that the king of Portugal was near at hand; and when he was within two miles of the town, the duke of Lancaſter and his knights mounted their horſes, and went forth to meet him. There was much apparent joy, and the king and the duke, as well as the Engliſh and Portugueſe knights, teſtified great pleaſure at meeting. The army of Portugal was behind, under the command of ſix great barons of that country, namely, Ponaſſe d'Acunha, Vaſco Martin de Merlo, the Poſdich Doſnedegouſſe, Salvaſe de Merlo, ſir Alleyne Pereira,

Pereira, marſhal, and John Radighos de Sar. Several barons were with the king, whoſe eſcort was but three hundred ſpears. On their arrival at Orenſe, the king was lodged becoming his ſtate, and much at his eaſe, and the place was full of horſes. The king, duke, and lords, were five days in council, and determined to make an excurſion, with the united armies, towards Medina del Campo and Vilalpando, where ſir Oliver du Gueſclin, conſtable of Caſtille, and the largeſt garriſon of Frenchmen were ſtationed. They were puzzled how to croſs the Duero, which at times is dangerous, and more ſo in the ſummer, from the melting of the ſnows on the mountains, than in the winter, when it is frozen, like all other ſmall ſtreams. Notwithſtanding this difficulty, they reſolved to march for Campo, in the hopes of finding a ford; and orders were iſſued to the armies for this effect. They were well pleaſed to receive them, for they had ſuffered very ſeverely at Orenſe, and in thoſe parts; and many had been carried off by ſickneſs.

The king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter left Orenſe together; but their armies were ſeparated, becauſe they were not acquainted, nor underſtood each other's language, and likewiſe to prevent any diſputes or riots that might fall out between them; for the Portugueſe are paſſionate, overbearing, and not eaſily pacified, and the Engliſh are ſpiteful and proud. The conſtables and marſhals of each army, when they ſent out parties to forage, ordered them to take ſeparate routes.

Theſe

Theſe armies, which were ſufficient to combat what force the king of Caſtille and his allies could bring to the field, continued their march until they came to the river Duero. This was not eaſy to paſs; for it is deep, with high banks, and full of broken rocks, except at certain bridges, which had either been deſtroyed, or ſo ſtrongly fortified and guarded, it was not poſſible to attempt them with hopes of ſucceſs.

While they were conſidering how they could croſs it, it chanced that ſir John Holland, the conſtable, ſir Thomas Moreaux, and ſir Richard Burley, the marſhals, or their foragers, during an excurſion, fell in with a ſquire of Galicia, called Dommage Baghor, who was riding through the country, having paſſed the river: he knew that all the bridges were broken down, but he was acquainted with a ford that could eaſily be paſſed on horſeback or on foot, and when he ſaw the enemy, he had turned back, and was riding for this ford. He was made priſoner, and brought to theſe lords, who cloſely examined him as to a ford; and the conſtable told him, that if he would ſhew them a ſafe one, for he had heard there were ſuch, he would not only give him his liberty, but make him a handſome preſent beſide. The ſquire was not well adviſed, and too eager to gain his liberty and the conſtable's gift: he therefore ſaid, that he would ſhew them a place where the whole army might croſs in ſafety. The conſtable and marſhals were ſo joyful on hearing this, that they ſent to acquaint the duke with the good news. The armies

mies followed the vanguard of the conſtable, which had arrived at the ford. The ſquire entered the river as their guide; and, when they ſaw there was not any danger, all paſſed in the beſt manner they could.

The van, having croſſed, halted on the bank to guide the main army over. Sir John Holland kept his promiſe with the Galician ſquire, by giving him his liberty and a preſent; and he inſtantly ſet off for Medina del Campo, where the king of Caſtille then was. It is a handſome and ſtrong city in that country.

The duke of Lancaſter and the king of Portugal rode in company, and came to this ford, which is called Place-ferrade, where the gravel is ſound and firm. They croſſed without difficulty, as did their armies: the rear diviſion croſſed on the morrow, and they all encamped themſelves on its banks.

News was ſoon carried to Ruelles*, Cateſeries†, Medina del Campo, Vilalpando, St. Phagon‡, and to the other towns and caſtles in Caſtille, that the Engliſh had paſſed the Duero, having diſcovered a ford. They were much ſurpriſed, and ſaid they muſt have been ſhewn it through treachery; for, if it had not been made known by ſome of the natives, they would never have found it out. There is nothing but what ſooner or later is diſcovered, by ſervants or

---

* Ruelles, Q.

† Cateſeries, Q.

‡ St. Phagon, Q.

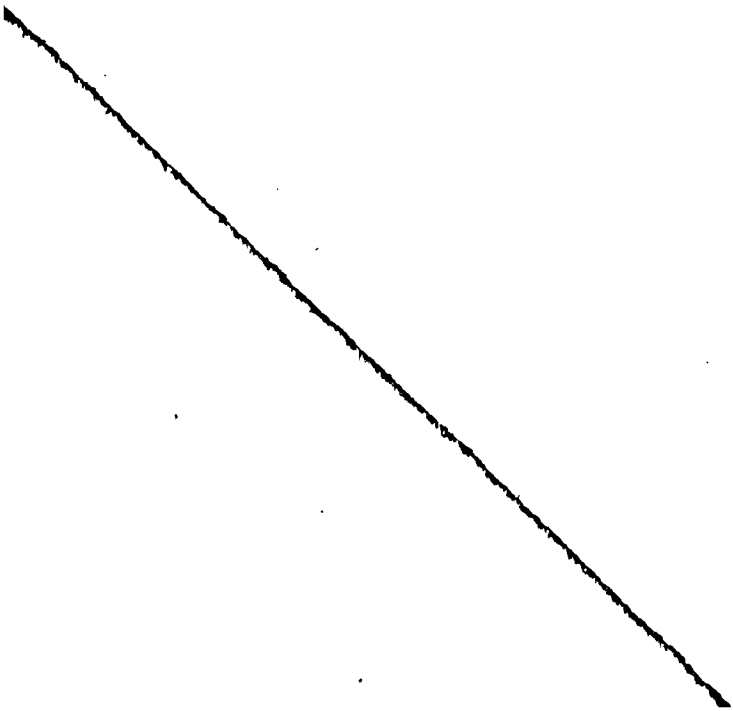
otherwiſe,

otherwiſe. The lords attached to the king of Caſtille learnt that Dommage Baghor had pointed out to them this ford: he was inſtantly arreſted, and, having acknowledged what he had done, was condemned to death. He was carried to Vilalpando, and there beheaded.

END OF THE EIGHTH VOLUME.

J. M'CREERY, Printer,
Black-horse-court, Fleet-street, London.

00037325



Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016